**Basic** 

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

O SARA

# Oxford Word Skills



Learn and practise English vocabulary



# Oxford Word Skills



OXFORD

# Sara.English.School

# www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford 022 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD BNGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted Database right Oxford University Press (maker) First published 2008 2012 2011 2010 2009 2008

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

#### No unanthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only, Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

ISBN: 978 0 19 462000 0

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Alamy Images pp 55 (airplane/Mint Photography), 65 (leg of lamb/Jeff Morgan, tuna steak/Maximillian Weinzlerl), 67 (raw peas/foodfolio, cooked peas/Paul Bradforth), 72 (grilled fish/Images of Birmingham), 140 (TV/Iony Cordoza, radio/Mark Bolton Photography, Mini/Natonal Motor Museum)

Cephas Picture Library p 65 (squid/Tim Hill)

Corbis pp 16 (blooming trees/Bloominage, beach in summer/ Randy Faris, winterfimage100), 38 (couple/Tim Pannell), 72 (fried eggs/J. Riou), 72 (roast chicken/David Thomas/PictureArts), 140 (ocar red carpet/Chris Pizzello/Reuters, Olympic flag/Duomo), 164 (broken pencil/Jose Luís Pelaez/Blend Images)

Epson p 55 (printer)

Getty Images pp 37 (two women/Elisabeth Knox/Photographer's Choice), 39 (two women/Elisabeth Knox/Photographer's Choice), 50 (tights/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 96 (bazaar/Scott R. Barbour/Image Bank), 133 (orchestra/Oliver Benn/Stone, Vanessa Mae/George Chin/WireImage), 159 (two girls in library/John Cumming/Iconica)

Lebrecht Music & Arts Photo Library p 133 (Sir Simon Rattle/ Wladimir Polak, Cecilia Bartoli/Laurie Lewis, Yo Yo Ma/T. Martinot)

Mark Mason Studios pp 10, 12 (covercard)

Music Pictures p 132 (Arctic Monkeys/Rob Verhost/Redferns)

OUP pp 11 (pencil/Photodisc), 50 (Hemera), 52 (clothes shopping), 65 (ham slices/Hemera), 66 (tin/Hemera), 69 (wine bottle, can/Hemera), 82 (young man/Image Source), 86 (bell/Hemera), 103 (soap, toothbrush, electric razor, hairbrush, comb, tissues, perfume/Hemera), 111 (young man/Image Source), 112 (young man/Image Source), 127 (young man/Image Source), 140 (newspapers, Journal), 153 (handshake/Hemera)

Photolibrary.com p 16 (autumn/Mark Barrett/Index Stock Imagery)

Pierre d'Alancaisez pp 55 (wine bottle), 65 (bacon, sausages, salmon steak, tuna steak, prawns, fillet steak, pork chop, salmon fillet, bacon), 67 (frozen peas), 69 (juice carton, biscuits and rice, jars, tin, chocolates and matches), 103 (toothpaste, shampoo, razor, make-up)

Punchstock pp 72 (boiled rice/Digital Vision), 131 (woman shooting/Photodisc)

Press Association p 140 (Iraq demonstration/Dima Gavrysh/ Associated Press)

Ronald Grant Archive p135 (Rumor Has It poster/Warner Bros. Pictures)

StockPood pp65 (crab/Peter Rees, mussels/Eisling, chicken/Foodcollection); 72 (rare steak/Eisling, well done steak/Foodcollection)

Illustrations by Stephane Gamain/NB Illustration, Willie Ryan/ Illustration, Oxford Designers and Illustrators

Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst



# Contents

Ack	nowledgements	7
Intr	oduction	8
Sta	arter unit	
Hov	v to use a unit	10
Hov	v to learn new words	11
Hov	v to do the exercises	12
Abb	reviations and symbols	13
Ва	sic English	
1	I can understand and say numbers	14
2	I can tell the time	15
3	I can say days and dates	16
4	I can say countries and nationalities	18
5	I can use classroom vocabulary	20
6	I can use English language words	21
7	I can ask and answer questions about language	22
	Review	23
Pe	ople	
		26
8	I can give personal information I can fill in a form	26
		27 28
	I can talk about my family	30
11		32
13	I can name parts of the body I can describe people	33
14	I can talk about character	36
15	I can describe relationships	38
16	I can say how I feel	40
	Review	42



# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# Everyday life

17	I can describe my routine	46
18	I can talk about clothes	49
19	I can buy clothes	51
20	I can talk about money	54
21	I can talk about the weather	56
22	l can talk about illness	58
23	I can get help at the chemist's	60
	Review	61

## Food and drink

24	I can name meat and fish	65
25	I can name fruit and vegetables	66
26	I can buy food in a shop	68
27	I can order in a café	71
28	I can order in a restaurant	72
	Review	75

# Getting around

29	I can get around on buses	78
30	I can get around on trains	80
31	I can ask for and give directions	82
32	I can talk about roads and traffic	84
33	I can understand signs and notices	86
	Review	87

## **Places**

34	I can talk about my country	90
35	I can talk about my town	91
36	I can describe the countryside	94
37	I can talk about shops	96
38	I can talk about my home	98
39	I can describe a kitchen	100
40	I can describe a bedroom and bathroom	102
41	I can describe a living room	104
	Review	105

# Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# Study and work

42	l can talk about my school	109
43	I can talk about university	112
44	I can name jobs	114
45	l can describe a job	116
46	I can talk about using a computer	118
47	I can use email and the internet	120
	Review	122

# Hobbies and interests

48	I can say what I like	126
49	I can talk about sport	128
50	I can talk about my free time	130
51	I can talk about music	132
52	I can talk about films	134
53	I can talk about the media	136
	Review	138

# Holidays

54	I can arrange a holiday	141
55	I can book a hotel room	142
56	I can communicate in an airport	144
57	I can describe a beach holiday	146
58	I can describe a sightseeing holiday	147
59	I can use the bank and post office	148
	Review	150

# Social English

60	I can meet and greet people	153
61	I can use special greetings	155
62	I can ask for information	156
63	I can ask for things	158
64	I can invite people	160
65	I can make suggestions	161
66	I can offer, accept, and refuse	162
67	I can say sorry and respond	164



	Sara.English.School	www.SaraEnglis	hSchool.com
68	I can express my opinion	165	
69	I can use the phone	166	
	Review	168	
l٥	unauaaa		
La	inguage		
70	I can use common adjectives	172	
71	I can use common adverbs	174	
72	I can use irregular verbs	176	
73	I can use phrasal verbs	178	
<b>74</b>	I can use prepositions of time	180	
75	I can use time words and phrases	181	
76	I can use prepositions of place and movemen	t 183	
77	I can use link words (1)	186	
78	1 can use link words (2)	188	
79	I can use 'have' and 'have got'	190	
80	l can use 'get'	192	
	Review	193	
Voc	cabulary building tables	199	
Cor	mmon irregular verbs	202	
An	swer key	203	
An	swer key to review units	225	
List	t of spotlight boxes	235	



237

Word list/Index

#### Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain English Centre, Valencia, Spain Tti School of English, London, UK Bell International, London, UK Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd and the students at International House, Bath, UK

Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk and Iza Algermissen in Poland

They would also like to thank Scott Thornbury and Rachel Dudley.

ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Andreas Schmidt (Germany) Ayumi Whitehouse (Japan) Funda Bolat (Turkey) Esteban Cichello Hubner (Argentina) Anna Anagnostopoulou (Greece) László Rézműves (Hungary) Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman (UK) Marcelo Ritter (Brazil) Jung Hyang Oh (South Korea)





## Introduction

#### What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise and revise new vocabulary.

Basic: elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and	
Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
Advanced: advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)	

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

#### How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to ten units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

#### What vocabulary is included?

At Basic level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, using
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g., prepositions of place, phrasal verbs

There is a particular emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English. This is continued at Intermediate level with the addition of more vocabulary from different styles of written English. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items as well as more idiomatic language.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™ which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. at the moment, never mind, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. main course in a restaurant, or hand luggage at an airport.



# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings. (See *How to learn new words* in the Starter unit for advice.)

#### How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through visuals, tables or different types of text, including dialogues. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying mini-glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5-10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can
  use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

#### How can students use the material on their own?

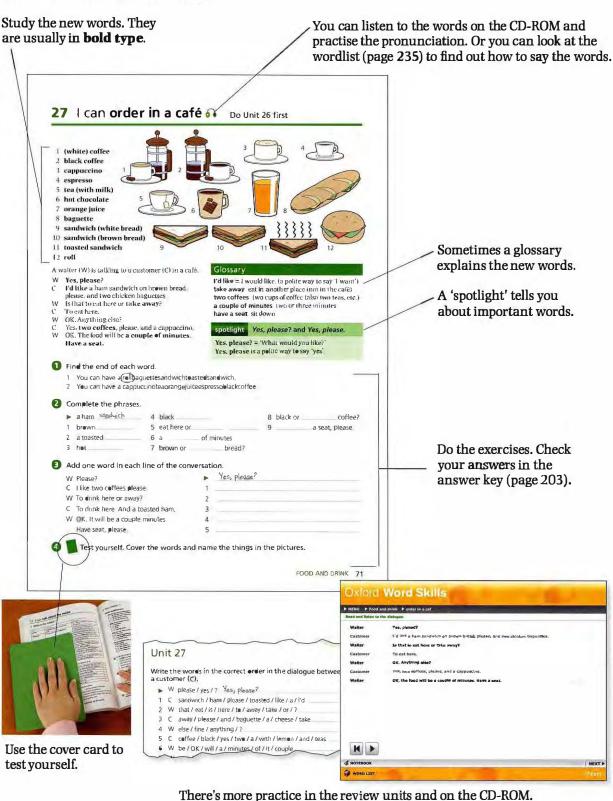
The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.





#### Starter

#### A How to use a unit

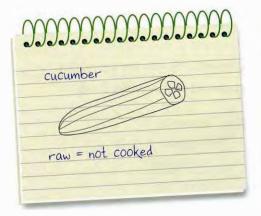




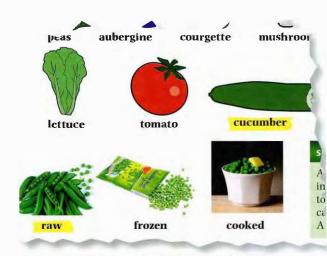
#### How to learn new words



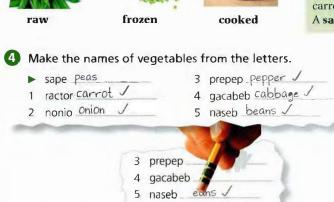
Repeat the words two or three times to help you remember them.



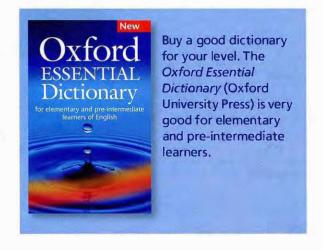
- Write down new words in a notebook. Write the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.
- Write the words in sentences. Say them to yourself.
- You can do the exercises in the review units. or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. Basic English).
- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (pages 199 to 201).
- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/ wordskills) for links to more practice and other useful websites.



Use a coloured pen to help you remember difficult words.



Use a pencil. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.



toma



## C How to do the exercises

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

Word	Meaning		
tick	/		
underline	word	word	
cross out	-word		
circle	(word)		
complete	word or I like chocolate is	Ce Cream.	
right	'2 + 2 = 4' is <b>right</b> .		
wrong	$^{\circ}2 + 2 = 5^{\circ}$ is <b>wrong.</b>		
mistake	If something is a <b>mistake</b> , it e.g. Inglish (The 'I' is a mistak		
correct	Make something right. e.g. Inglish (wrong) English (ri	ght)	
true	e.g. London is in England. Tha	t's <b>true</b> .	
false	e.g. Paris is in Italy. That's fa	lse. It's in France.	
the same	e.g. Small and little are <b>the s</b>	<b>ame.</b> (small = little)	
different	e.g. Big and small are different. (They're not the same.)		
match	Find something that you can put with another thing.  e.g.  1 I'm from b a music  2 I can speak b Japan  3 I like c English		
missing	If something is <b>missing</b> , it is not there. e.g. He comes New York. The word from is <b>missing</b> . (He comes from New York.)		
cover	Put one thing over another thing.		
table	This is a table:		
	Word	Meaning	
	tick	1	
	radarline	Mond	
column	The table has two <b>columns</b> : a column for 'words' and a column for 'meanings'.		



Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the meaning. Can you remember the meaning?



# D Abbreviations and symbols

- opp **opposite**. Old is the **opposite** of young.
- syn synonym: a word that means the same as another word, e.g. small = little
- informal. If a word or phrase is informal, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know very well. The opposite is formal. If a word or phrase is formal, you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know very well, or in written English.
- etc. You use etc. at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all.
- e.g. for example: Fruit, e.g. apples and bananas.
- uncountable noun. These nouns have no plural form and can't be used with a or an.
- PT past tense (past simple form of an irregular verb)
- PP past participle

#### **Vowels**

i:	see	/siː/
i	happy	/ˈhæpi/
I	sit	/srt/
е	ten	/ten/
æ	hat	/hæt/
a:	father	/ˈfɑ:ðə(r)/
מ	got	/got/
o:	saw	/so:/
υ	put	/put/
u	casual	/ˈkæʒuəl/
u:	too	/tu:/
٨	cup	/kap/
3:	bird	/bs:d/
ə	about	/əˈbaut/
еі	say	/seɪ/
əυ	go	/gəu/
aı	live	/farv/
aυ	now	/nau/
OI.	boy	/bɔɪ/
ıə	near	/nɪə(r)/
еә	hair	/heə(r)/
ບວ	sure	/ʃuə(r)/

#### Consonants

p	pen	/pen/
ь	bad	/bæd/
1	tea	/ti:/
d	did	/dɪd/
k	cat	/kæt/
g	got	/got/
ιſ	cheap	/tʃiːp/
d <sub>3</sub>	jam	/dʒæm/
ſ	fall	/fo:1/
v	verb	/v3:b/
θ	thin	/0:n/
ð	this	/ðis/
S	so	/səu/
Z	zero	/uereiz/
S	shoe	/ʃuː/
3	television	/'telivizn, teli'vizn/
h	hat	/hæt/
m	map	/mæp/
n	no	/nou/
ŋ	sing	/sɪŋ/
1	leg	/leg/
r	red	/red/
j	yes	/jes/
w	wet	/wet/



# 1 I can understand and say numbers 60

1	one	11	eleven	21	twenty-one	101	a/one hundred and one
2	two	12	twelve	22	twenty-two	140	a/one hundred and forty
3	three	13	thirteen	30	thirty	200	two hundred NOT two hundreds
4	four	14	fourteen	40	forty	1,000	a/one thousand
5	five	15	fifteen	50	fifty	1,050	a/one thousand and fifty
6	six	16	sixteen	60	sixty	1,250	a/one thousand two hundred and fifty
7	seven	17	seventeen	70	seventy	2,000	two thousand
8	eight	18	eighteen	80	eighty	100,000	a/one hundred thousand
9	nine	19	nineteen	90	ninety	1,000,000	a/one million
10	ten	20	twenty	100	a/one hundred	2,000,000	two million NOT two millions

In large numbers (over 999), write a comma (,) between thousands and hundreds, e.g. 11,000, and between millions and thousands, e.g. 3,000,000.

spotlight

about

How much is it? ~ It's about £100.

(= 18, 19, 20, 21 or 22)

About means 'a bit more or a little less than'.

How many students are there? ~ About 20.

1	Correct	the	mistakes.

- ▶ thirty one thirty-one
- 1 two hundreds
- 2 three hundred forty
- 3 twenty two
- 4 42500
- 5 one thousand and two hundred
- 6 two thousand three hundred fifty \_\_\_\_\_

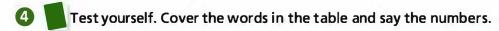
#### Write the middle number in words.

	24 twenty-five 20	5	118	120
1	7	6	243	245
2	192	1 7	999	1,001
3	666	8 8	5,055	5,057
4	495	9	11,300	11,302

#### 3 Write the number in words using about.

- sixty-eight people about seventy people

  1 ninety-seven euros
- 2 nine students
- 3 thirty-one years
- 4 four hundred and ninety
- 5 one thousand nine hundred and ninety
- 6 seventy-eight people \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 two hundred and forty-nine thousand \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 nine hundred and eighty thousand





# I can tell the time

Do Unit 1 first

# A Telling the time ••

What's the time?

What time is it?

It's four o'clock.

It's five past six.

t's **quarter past four** t's four fifteen.

t's twenty past six. It's six twenty.

It's half past four. t's four thirty.

t's twenty to seven. It's six forty.

It's quarter to five. It's **four forty-five.** 

It's three minutes to seven.

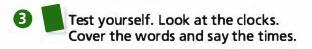
Use minutes with to and past when the number of minutes is not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five, e.g. three minutes past six NOT threepast six.

#### Write the times in words.

3.10 three ten
9.15
10.25
3.35
11.45
3.45
7.20
2.30
4.40

#### Write the times in words. Use past and to. Lalf -ast 1 ...

	12.30 half past twelve
1	7.15
2	9.30
3	11.35
	3.50
	8.25
6	1.03
7	2.45
8	4.17



# Giving more information 6

9 a.m. nine o'clock in the morning

12.00 p.m. midday

5 p.m. five o'clock in the afternoon

7 p.m. seven o'clock in the evening

7.57 nearly/almost eight o'clock

8.02 just after eight

11.30 p.m. eleven thirty at night

12.00 a.m. midnight

#### Same or different? Write 5 or D.

•	8.45 p.m.	8.45 in the evening	S
	3.00 p.m.	nearly 3.00	D
1	12.00 at night	midnight	-
2	4.00 a.m.	4.00 in the afternoon	
3	6.32	nearly 6.30	
4	11.45 p.m.	11.45 at night	
5	8.43	nearly quarter to nine	
6	2.17	quarter past two	
7	12.03 p.m.	just after midday	
8	3.00 a.m.	three o'clock	

#### ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1	When do	banks open	in your	country?

Do they close at midday?

What time do shops close?

What time do bars open?

What time do they close?

When do post offices open and close?

#### 3 I can say days and dates Do Unit 1 first

# A Days, months, and seasons 60

days of the week	Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday
months of the year	January February March April May June July August September October November December
seasons (in Britain)	spring (March – May) summer (June – August) autumn (September – November) winter (December – February)
special days	Christmas Day (25 December) New Year's Day (1 January) your birthday (the day you were born)



### spotlight Capital letters Days and months have a capital letter. Monday NOT monday January NOT january

(	a	Put the words in	the correct ord	lar Write the	number in	the hov
١	w	Put the words in	the correct ord	ier. write the	number in	the box.

	1	Wednesday Saturday Monday 1	Fric	day 🗌 Tuesday 📗 Sunday 🔲 Thursday 🗌			
	2 autumn spring winter summer						
	3	December March June February	y [	November January October			
		April July September May 4	Au	gust			
2	W	/rite the next day, month or season.					
	•	May June	5	Friday			
	<b>•</b>	Sunday Monday	5	March			
	1	Monday	7	January			
	2	August	3	autumn			
	3	spring	9	Wednesday			
	4	November 10	)	July			
3	A	ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.					
	1	Which month is your birthday?					
	2 Which season do you like best? Why?						
	3	Which day of the week do you like best? Wh	ıy?				
	4	What do you do on New Year's Day?	-				
	5	What are two other special days in the year	an	d when are they?			

Test yourself. Cover the days, months and seasons, and say or write them.



# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

## B Ordinal numbers and dates 60

2 <sup>nd</sup> second 3 <sup>rd</sup> third 4 <sup>th</sup> fourth	6 <sup>th</sup> sixth 7 <sup>th</sup> seventh 8 <sup>th</sup> eighth 9 <sup>th</sup> ninth 10 <sup>th</sup> tenth	11 <sup>th</sup> eleventh 12 <sup>th</sup> twelfth 13 <sup>th</sup> thirteenth 14 <sup>th</sup> fourteenth 15 <sup>th</sup> fifteenth	16 <sup>th</sup> sixteenth 17 <sup>th</sup> seventeenth 18 <sup>th</sup> eighteenth 19 <sup>th</sup> nineteenth 20 <sup>th</sup> twentieth	21st twenty-first 22nd twenty-second 23rd twenty-third 30th thirtieth 31st thirty-first
---	---	---	--	---

#### 5 Complete the words.

	ni <u>n</u> th	5	eigth
1	thrd	6	si_teenth
2	twent_eth	7	fo_rteenth
3	fi_th	8	th_rteenth
4	frst	9	s_cond

#### 6 Look at the calendar. Answer the questions. Write the dates as we say them.

#### spotlight Saying and writing dates

We can write the date like this:

10 March or 10th March or 3.10.08 or 3/10/08 We say the date like this:

What's the date today? ~ It's March the tenth. ~ It's the tenth of March.

Say the year like this:

1980 nineteen eighty 1995 nineteen ninety-five 2006 two thousand and six 2020 twenty twenty

Mai	rch						Apı	ril					
S	M	-T	W	T	F	S	S	М	Ť	W	T	F	S
				1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	29	30					

#### When's ...

- ▶ the first Saturday in March? March the third. OR The third of March.
- the second Tuesday in April?
- 2 the second Wednesday in April? \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 the first Sunday in March?
- 4 the first Friday in April?
- 5 the third Tuesday in April?
- 6 the fifth Saturday in March?
- the third Wednesday in March?
- 8 the fourth Monday in April?

#### Write the dates or years as we say them.

▶ 6.9 The sixth of September. OR September the sixth.

1	3.2
2	4.7
3	10.12
4	12.8
5	15.1

1989

7	21.5
8	30 11

0	30.11	_	-
9	22.4		

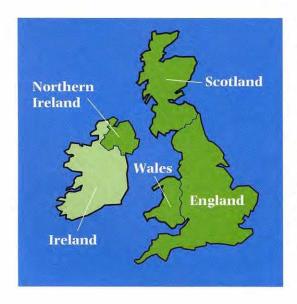
IU	2013	
11	Today's date _	• • • Anapopulation

12 The date next Tuesday .....

# I can say countries and nationalities 60

(I com	[I'm (I speak)		
Area in the world	Country	Nationality (Language)	
Europe	The Czech Republic	Czech	
	France	French	
	Germany	German	
	Greece	Greek	
	Hungary	Hungarian	
	Italy	Italian	
	Poland	Polish	
	Portugal	Portuguese	
	Russia	Russian	
1	Spain	Spanish	
1	Switzerland	Swiss (German, French, Italian	
	Turkey	Turkish	
Asia	India	Indian (Hindi)	
Asia/The Far East	China	Chinese (Mandarin, Cantonese)	
1	Japan	Japanese	
	South Korea	Korean	
	Thailand	Thai	
North America	Canada	Canadian (English, French)	
	The United States	American (English)	
Central America	Mexico	Mexican (Spanish)	
South America	Argentina	Argentinian (Spanish)	
	Brazil	Brazilian (Portuguese)	
The Middle East	Saudi Arabia	Saudi (Arabic)	
Africa	Egypt	Egyptian (Arabic)	
Australasia	Australia	Australian (English)	

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same, e.g. Czech is the nationality and the language. Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from Mexico are Mexican, but they speak Spanish. Countries, nationalities, and languages begin with capital letters: Japan NOT japan.



#### spotlight People from a country

To talk about people from a country, we often add 's' to the nationality, e.g. Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks. Some plural forms are irregular: the British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss.

(Great) Britain = England, Wales, and Scotland

The United Kingdom/The UK = England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland Only people from England are English. People from Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are not English, but they are British.



# www.SaraEnglishSchool.com Sara.English.School

- True or false? Write T or F.
  - Argentinians speak Spanish.
  - Saudis speak Arabic. \_\_\_\_
  - Mexicans speak Spanish. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Thais speak Japanese. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Hungarians speak Hungarian. \_\_\_\_\_
- Complete the sentences.
  - ► China is in The Far <u>tast</u>
  - Scotland is in Great \_\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 Hungary is in \_\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 Mexico is in \_\_\_\_\_ America.
  - 4 Thailand is in The \_\_\_\_\_\_East.

- Australians speak Australian. \_\_\_\_\_ 5
- 6 The Chinese speak Chinese. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Brazilians speak Portuguese. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Americans speak English. .\_\_\_\_
- Czechs speak Polish. \_\_\_\_\_ 9
- 5 Argentina is in \_\_\_\_\_ America.
- Egypt is in \_\_\_\_\_\_. 6
- Saudi Arabia is in \_\_\_\_\_ 7
- 8 India is in \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- Australia is in \_\_\_\_\_\_. 9
- Write the names of the countries and languages.



- Fingland English 1
- 2
- 3

- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10 11
- Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.

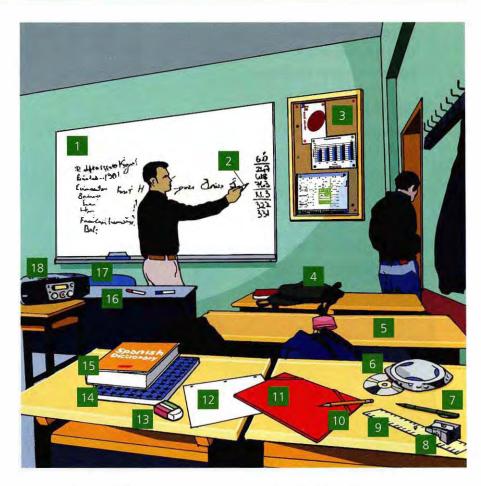
-ian	-ish	-an	
Italian			
		110	

Test yourself. Cover the nationalities and languages in the table on page 18. Look at the countries and say the nationalities and languages.



# I can use classroom vocabulary 6

- 1 board
- 2 board pen
- 3 noticeboard
- 4 bag
- 5 desk
- 6 CD player and CD
- 7 pen
- 8 pencil sharpener
- 9 ruler
- 10 pencil
- 11 folder
- 12 piece of paper
- 13 rubber
- 14 notebook
- 15 dictionary
- 16 table
- 17 chair
- 18 cassette player



- ▶ pen 🗸
- 3 chair
  - 7 dictionary
- 11 table

- ▶ board 🗶
- 4 rubber 8 ruler
- 12 pencil sharpener

- 1 desk
- 5 board pen
- 9 noticeboard

- 2 piece of paper
- 6 CD
- 10 pencil
- Add another word to make a longer word or phrase.

  - ▶ notebook 3 notice 6 CD
  - - 4 pencil

  - 2 cassette 5 piece of
- ABOUT YOU Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.

  - ► I've got a dictionary. ► I haven't got a cassette player.

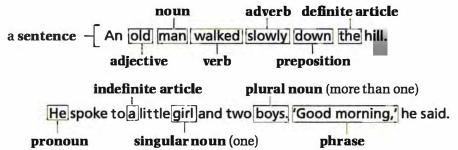
Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.



# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# 6 I can use English language words 6





- There are eight words in the first sentence, and thirteen in the second.
- Walk is a regular verb; the past simple is walked.
- Speak is an irregular verb. The past simple is spoke, and the past participle is spoken. (The past participle is used to form the present perfect.)
- Circle the correct answer.
  - A and the are adjectives articles.
  - 1 A and an are definite/indefinite articles.
  - 2 Woman is a noun/sentence.
  - 3 Up is a preposition/pronoun.
  - 4 Speak is a regular/an irregular verb.
- 5 Spoken is the past simple/past participle of speak.
- 6 Books is singular/plural.
- 7 Go and do are verbs/past simple forms.
- 8 Slowly and quickly are adverbs/phrases.

#### Find the answers for each sentence.

I have three English lessons every week.	a verb <u>have</u> 1 a pronoun	2	a plural noun
There's a young man from Rome in the class.	3 an adjective		an indefinite articlea definite article
Today, he asked a question, and he spoke quickly.	7 an adverb 8 an irregular past simple	9	a regular past simple
I think he's in the wrong class.	10 a singular noun	11	a sentence

# I can ask and answer questions about language 60

Question	Answer				
What does 'dreadful' mean? (NOT What means 'dreadful'?)	I don't know. = It's a new word for me.  OR It means 'terrible'.				
What's this called in English?	I can't remember. = I knew the word yesterday, but I don't know it today.  OR It's a stamp.				
How do you say 'pasaporte' in English?	Passport.				
Could you explain 'No vacancies'? (NOT Could you explain me?)	Yes, you see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.				
What's the difference between 'hello' and 'hi'?	The meaning is the same, but 'hi' is informal.				
What's the opposite of 'large'?	Small.				
How do you pronounce 'May'?	/meɪ/, like 'day'.				
'Eight' ls pronounced /aɪt/. Is that right? or Is that correct?	No, that's wrong. or That's not right. It's pronounced /ent/.				
How do you <b>spell</b> 'apple'?	I'm not sure. Is it one 'p' or two? OR A-donble P-L-E. (double P = two Ps)				

#### 1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- ► How do you spell your name? \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 How do you say 'cup' in German? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What's the opposite of 'closed'? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What does 'tiny' mean? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 How do you pronounce 'tiny'?
- 5 Could you explain 'How are you?' \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 'Question' and 'answer' mean the same.
  - Is that right? \_\_\_\_\_

- a It means 'very small'.
- It's what you say when you meet a friend.
- D-E-double N-I-S. 🗸
- d /tami/
- No, it's wrong.
- f I don't know.
- g Open.

## Complete the questions.

- ▶ What does 'awful' mean ? ~ 'Terrible' or 'dreadful'.
- 1 What's this \_\_\_\_\_\_ in English? ~ It's a frying pan.
- 2 How do you \_\_\_\_\_\_ 'tomato'? ~ /təm'a:təu/.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_\_ you spell 'eye'? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E.
- 4 What's the difference \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 'bye' and 'goodbye'? ~ 'Bye' is more informal.
- 5 'Pen' is the same as 'pencil'. Is that \_\_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, that's wrong.
- 6 What's the \_\_\_\_\_ of 'interesting'? ~ Boring.
- 7 What .\_\_\_\_\_ 'enormous' mean? ~ It means 'very big'.
- 8 Could you \_\_\_\_\_\_ 'EXIT'? ~ You see it on a door. It means that you can go out there.



# Review: Basic English

#### Unit 1

Do the maths. Write the answer in words.

- ► ten plus (+) seven = seventeen
- ▶ eight minus (-) three = five
- 1 three plus nine =
- 2 four plus eleven = \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 nineteen minus six =
- 4 five plus twenty-nine =
- 5 sixteen minus five = \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 eighty-seven minus eight =
- 7 ninety-five plus seventeen =
- 8 thirty-five minus eight = \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 a hundred and five plus seventy = \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 three hundred minus fourteen =
- 11 twenty-eight plus thirteen =
- 12 one thousand minus forty-seven = \_\_\_\_\_

#### Unit 2

Write the times in the box under the clocks. Then add 15 minutes to each time. Write the new times with past or to.

five past eleven half past six	twenty-five past five twenty past two	ten to eight ✓ midnight twenty to two five to nine	
► 07:50 ten to eight	+15 five past eight	4 02:20	+15
1 [13:40]	+15	5 20:55	+15
2 12:00	+15	6 05:30	+15
3 [23:05]	+15	7 [1:25]	+15
	The state of the s		

### Unit 3

1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 A What's the \_\_\_\_\_today?
  - B The fifth \_\_\_\_\_October.
- 2 A I don't like January.
  - B Why?
  - A Because it's the coldest \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A Which \_\_\_\_\_ do you like best?
  - B Summer.
- 4 A It's my \_\_\_\_\_\_today.
  - B Really? How old are you?
- 5 A I'm going to California on New \_\_\_\_\_
  - B Fantastic!

#### 

1 Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with capital letters. Then write C for 'country' or N for 'nationality'.

5 \_\_\_hina \_\_\_\_

6 \_\_\_zech \_\_\_\_\_

7 \_\_\_qypt \_\_\_\_

8 \_\_\_\_panish \_\_\_\_\_

9 ....razil \_\_\_\_\_

My name's Magda, and I'm studying ► English in London at the moment. I'm from Po (1),

and I live with two students: Silvia, who's Br\_\_\_\_\_\_ (2), and Irina who's from the Cz\_\_\_\_\_ Re\_\_\_\_\_ (3). Irina speaks Cz\_\_\_\_\_ (4) and Po\_\_\_\_\_ (5). We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two Ja\_\_\_\_\_ (6) students, a Ko\_\_\_\_\_ (7), three Tu\_\_\_\_\_ (8) women, a young It\_\_\_\_\_ (9) girl, a Ch\_\_\_\_\_ (10) boy and four students

10 \_\_urkey \_\_\_\_\_

from Sp.\_\_\_\_\_(11). Our teacher is Dennis, and he's Au.\_\_\_\_\_(12).

1 The teacher writes on this in the classroom.

2 You use this if you make a mistake.

5 You sharpen pencils with this. \_\_\_\_\_\_6 You write new vocabulary in this. \_\_\_\_\_\_

10 You can put pieces of paper in this.

4 You find the meaning of words in this.

9 You sit at one of these. \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_

11 \_\_\_reek \_\_\_\_\_

12 \_\_rench \_\_\_\_\_

13 \_\_\_ermany \_\_\_\_\_

14

15

16

\_ussia \_\_\_\_

\_rgentinian \_\_\_\_\_

\_ortugal \_\_\_\_

8 What's the 11th month of the year?

Unit 4

► Saudi \_N

▶ Britain \_\_\_\_\_\_C

1 \_\_\_taly .\_\_\_\_

2 \_\_ungary \_\_\_\_\_

3 <u>\_exico</u> \_\_\_\_\_

4 \_\_\_wiss \_\_\_\_\_

2 Complete the text.

Unit 5

Write your answers.

➤ You put your things in this. a bag

3 You put notices on this.

7 You listen to CDs on this. \_\_\_\_\_\_

## Unit 6

Find 12 more English language words in the square. Write them in the correct spaces below.

1	S	P	Α	S	Т	S	1	М	Р	L	E
V	S	T	Α	R	T	1	C	L	Е	W	Р
D	Ε	U	P	S	1	Ν	G	U	L	Α	R
1	Ν	G	R	Ε	G	U	L	Α	R	D	Е
R	T	M	0	U	D	Y	L	U	R	J	Р
R	Ε	1	N	T	R	0	S	Е	K	Ε	0
E	N	L	0	Α	D	G	T	P	D	C	S
G	C	L	U	K	Ε	R	U	L	Ε	Τ	1
U	Ε	D	N	U	W	E	M	U	-		T
L	Υ	Α	D	V	Ε	R	В	R	M	V	L
A	R	0	F	0	P	Н	R	Α	S	Ε	0
R	U	W	0	R	D	C	0	L	R	P	Ν

	Walked, went, saw past simple
1	I come from France.
2	Quickly, slowly
3	In, from, on
4	Good afternoon, at school
5	Walk(ed), look(ed), listen(ed)
6	A, an, the

/	He, I, they
8	Table, go, very
9	Different, old, big
10	Boy (not boys)
11	Do (did), go (went)

12 Girls (not girl) \_\_\_

#### Unit 7

Answer the questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	What does terrible mean? It means very bad or dreadful.
1	What's the opposite of correct?
2	What's the difference between spelling and pronunciation?
3	How do you say hello in your language?
4	How do you pronounce explain?
5	What does wrong mean?
6	Tipy means the same as enormous Is that right?



What's this called in English?



How do you spell

# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# 8 I can give personal information 6

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The receptionist needs some information. RECEPTIONIST SANDRO spotlight information What's your family name? ~ Bertoli. And your first name? Information means facts about ~ Sandro. people or things, e.g. name, Could I have your address? ~ 45 Alfred Road. address, etc. Information is And the postcode? ~ CB2 4TX. uncountable; don't say Now the receptionist is asking Sandro about himself and his family. an information or informations. So, Sandro, where are you from? ~ Italy. (or Where do you come from?) Whereabouts in Italy? ~ Pisa. (or Where in Italy exactly?) What do you do in Pisa? ~ I'm a doctor. (or What's your job?) And are you married or single? ~ I'm married. Have you got any children? ~ Yes. A boy and a girl. ~ The boy's six and the girl's two. How old are they? 1 In each question, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it. Are married you? Are you married? 1 What do do you in your country? 2 Where do come from you? \_\_\_\_\_\_ 3 Could I your address have? 4 What's your name family? 5 What's postcode your? 6 How are old your children? 7 Have you any children got? 8 What's your name first? Complete the questions. (You will answer these questions in Exercise 3.) ▶ I need some information ABOUT YOU 1 What's your \_\_\_\_\_ name? ~ Kovács. 2 And your \_\_\_\_\_ name? ~ Zsuzsa. 3 Where are you \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Hungary. 4 \_\_\_\_\_? ~ The capital, Budapest. 5 And \_\_\_\_\_ I have your address? ~ Tarcali utca 27. 6 And the \_\_\_\_\_? ~ 1113. 7 And what \_\_\_\_\_ you do? ~ I'm an engineer. 8 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ No, I'm still single. 9 How \_\_\_\_\_ are you? ~ 1'm 27.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions above, or ask another student.



# 9 I can fill in a form 6

Meaning	Word	Example	ABOUT YOU
single or married man married woman single woman single or married woman	Mr Mrs Miss Ms	Miss	
family name	surname	Rodriguez	
lirst name(s)	forename(s)	Maria Helena	
day, month, and year you were born	date of birth	12 June 1985	
	nationality	Argentinian	
first language	mother tongue	Spanish	
	home address	California 2000. Piso 12 Buenos Aires C1289AAN	
phone number during the day	daytime tel	[54] 11 4302 8000	
no means 'number'	mobile <b>no</b>	0341 241248	
noт email number	email address	malena@latinoa.com.ar	
married or single?	marital status	single	
job	occupation	sports teacher	
elementary? intermediate? etc. tick = 🗸	level of English (please tick)	elementary 🗸 intermediate advanced	elementary intermediate advanced
your written name	signature	Maria Rodriguez	

## 1 True or false? Write T or F.

	Miss =	married	or single	woman	F
--	--------	---------	-----------	-------	---

- 1 occupation = married or single \_\_\_
- 2 Mrs = married woman
- 3 Mr = single or married man .....
- 4 surname = first name ...
- 5 tick = **/**\_\_\_\_
- 6 forename = family name \_\_\_\_\_

- 7 level = write your name
- 8 marital status = married or single
- 9 mother tongue = mother's name \_\_\_\_
- 10 email address = where you live
- 11 date of birth = today's date
- daytime tel = phone number during the day ....
- 2 ABOUT YOU Write your information in the table above.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?



# 10 I can talk about my family

# A Family tree 60





Elsie Damon's grandmother

Dave his father



Maggie his mother



Damon his brother



Karen his sister

his uncle



Jane his aunt



lames his cousin



lessica his cousin

All the people here are Damon's relatives. Luke is Dave and Maggie's son. Karen is Dave and Maggie's daughter. Maggie is Dave's wife. Dave is Maggie's husband. Elsie and Alf are Maggie's parents (= mother and father). Dave is Paul's brother-in-law. Jane is Maggie's sister-in-law. James is Maggie's nephew. Karen is Paul's niece. Luke is Elsie's grandson. Jessica is Elsie's granddaughter.

- Complete the sentences about Damon's family.
  - ▶ Paul is Elsie and Alf's 50n.
  - 1 Maggie is Elsie's
  - 2 Luke is Paul's
  - 3 Jessica is Maggie's
  - 4 Maggie is Jane's \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 Karen is Jessica's

- 6 Paul is Jane's
- 7 Elsie is Jessica's
- 8 Paul is Luke's \_\_\_\_\_ 9 Maggie is Jessica's \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 James, Maggie, and Alf are Damon's

Complete the table.

#### MALE **FEMALE** mother father 1 brother 2 husband 3 nephew 4 relative 5 son

	MALE	FEMALE
6	brother-in-law	
7	grandfather	
8	grandson	
9	cousin	
10	parent	



Test yourself. Cover the male words in Exercise 2. Look at the female words. Say the male words.

11 uncle

4 ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and brother, sister, uncle, etc.



# **B** Family history 60

My parents got married 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother, Luke, was born. Then I was born a year after that. I've also got a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so there are five of us in my family. Luke's got a girlfriend, Sue, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with our mum and dad. We spend a lot of time together.



#### spotlight How old are you?

Damon is 22 (years old). NOT He has 22 (years). His brother is older than him. He's 23. His sister is younger than him, She's 20. Alf's the oldest in the family. Karen's the youngest in the family.

Use the practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

#### Glossary

get married become husband and wife (get divorced stop being husband and wife) be born start your life have got have there are five of us NOT we are five girlfriend/boyfriend see picture below mum in mother dad INF father spend time with someone be with someone and do things with them



	6	True	or	false?	Write	Tor	F.
--	---	------	----	--------	-------	-----	----

- ▶ Damon is Luke's older brother. F
- 1 Damon's parents are divorced. \_\_\_\_\_ 2 Damon was born after Luke. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Luke is younger than Karen. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Luke and Sue live together. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Luke's mum has two sons. \_\_\_\_
- 6 Damon is Sue's boyfriend. \_\_\_\_\_ 7 There are four in Damon's family.
- 8 Karen is the youngest in the family. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Damon and Karen are often together.

#### 6 Write the words in correct sentences.

- ► his / divorced / are / parents His parents are divorced.
- 1 born / I / 1989 / in / was \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us
- 5 the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am \_\_\_\_\_
- brother / younger / 've got / sister / an / older / and / a / I

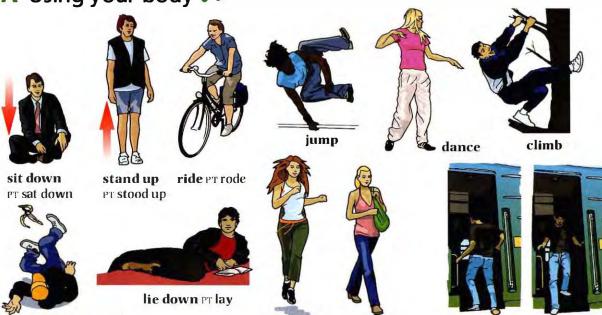
#### **7** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

- How many people are there in your family? When were you born? \_\_\_\_
- 3 Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you?
- 4 In your family, who do you spend a lot of time with?
- 5 Do you all live together?



# 11 I can describe physical actions

# A Using your body 6.



run PT ran

#### spotlight Irregular verbs

fall over PT fell over

The verbs sit. stand. run, fall, ride, lie and get are irregular. The past simple of these verbs is not formed by adding ed. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 202.

	walked walk	3	rode	6	got on
1	lay down	4	climbed	7	ran
2	fell over	5	sat down	8	stood up

walk

get on PT got on

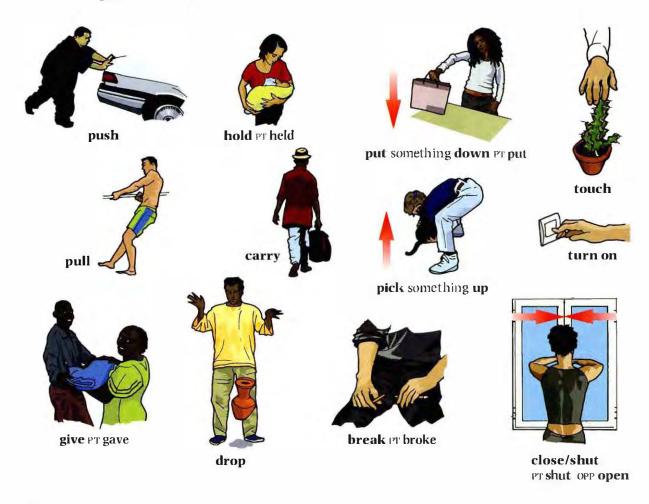
#### Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6-9.

	I sat do	wn at my desk and worked for two hours.	
1	The children have to	up when the teacher come	s into the classroom.
2	I often	to work in the summer – it's only twenty	minutes on foot.
3	I want to	Mount Kilimanjaro next year.	
4	Do you often	when you go to nightclubs?	
5	The doctor asked me to	down on the bed.	
6	The boys	into the swimming pool.	
7	She	her bike to school this morning.	
8	I was late, so I	to the bus stop, but I	over.
9	She	off the bus, went into the station and	a train

Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.



# **B** Using your hands 60



1	Make	words	from	the	letters.
4	IVIAKE	woi us	11 0111	uie	ie i tei 5.

•	ivge give	7	kipc pu
1	rrcay	8	kabre
2	nurt fof	9	dloh
3	tpu wond	10	uphs
4	seloc	11	thsu .
5	thuco	12	pnoe
6	pord		

#### 5 Can you do these things with one hand or do you need two? Write 1 or 2.

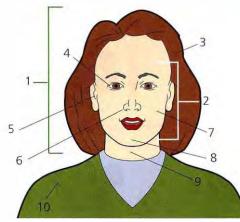
	shut a dictionary	4	pull your hair touch your hair
<b></b>	give someone five dictionaries 2	5	turn off a radio hold a radio
1	touch a bicycle push a bicycle	6	drop a ruler break a ruler
2	pick up a TV turn on a TV	7	carry a door close a door
3	break a bottle open a bottle.	8	pick up a baby hold a baby

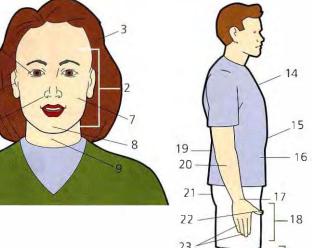
Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.



# 12 I can name parts of the body 6.

- 1 head
- 2 face
- 3 halr
- 4 eye
- 5 ear
- 6 nose
- 7 cheek
- 8 chin 9 neck
- 10 shoulder





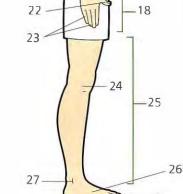
16 waist 17 wrist **18 hand** 19 back 20 arm 21 bottom 22 thumb 23 fingers 24 knee

14 chest

15 stomach

- 11 mouth
- 12 **lip**
- 13 tooth (plural teeth)





True or false? Write T or F.

I've got two ...

- eyes T
- 3 ears \_\_\_\_\_
- ▶ necks F noses \_\_\_
- 4 waists \_\_\_\_\_ knees \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 lips \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 shoulders \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 backs \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 thumbs \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 hands
- 10 wrists \_\_\_\_\_
- ankles \_\_\_\_\_
- heads \_\_\_\_\_ 13 arms .....
- 14 mouths \_\_\_\_\_
- Which one is different? Circle it.
  - finger thumb (waist) hand
  - 1 foot wrist toe ankle
  - 2 arm hand wrist stomach
  - 3 neck ears nose lips

- 4 cheeks finger chin hair
- 5 mouth teeth lips shoulder
- 6 eyes legs knees ankle
- shoulder chest neck bottom

- Complete the words.
  - ▶ hair

3 c\_\_\_t

- 4 t\_\_\_h 5 b ... \_ k
- 8 b\_\_\_\_m

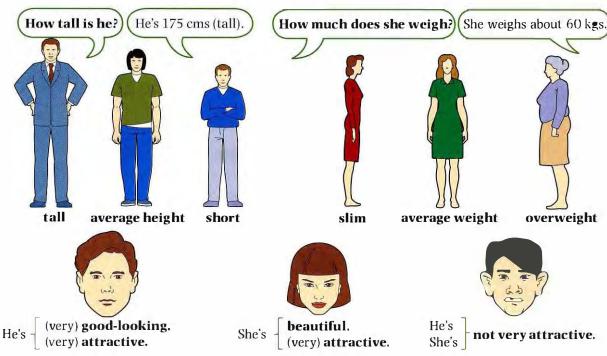
- 1 c\_\_n 2 s\_\_\_\_h
- 6 f\_\_e
- 7 n\_\_e
- 9 wa\_\_t

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the parts of the body.

- **25** leg
- 26 foot (plural feet)
- 27 ankle 28 toes

# 13 I can describe people

# A General description 6.



#### True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If you are *overweight*, you aren't *slim*. \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 1 Average height means not tall and not short. ....
- 2 Attractive and good-looking mean the same. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You can say a man is good-looking or beautiful. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If someone is fat, they are overweight. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The answer to 'How much does he weigh?' is '200 cms'.
- 6 'How tall are you?' is correct.
- It is polite to call someone fat and ugly.
- Thin and slim mean the same, but thin is more positive. \_\_\_\_

#### spotlight thin, fat, ugly

- · Thin means slim, but slim is more positive.
- · It isn't polite to tell someone they are fat. It is more polite to say they are overweight.
- The opposite of beautiful/ good-looking is ugly, but it isn't polite to tell someone they're ugly.

2	Complete the dialogues.	Don't use the words	in italics in your answ	ver.
---	-------------------------	---------------------	-------------------------	------

- ▶ Is he attractive? ~ Yes, he's good—looking 1 She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's average .\_\_\_\_\_ 2 Are the two brothers attractive? ~ Yes, they're both 3 Is she guite thin? ~ Yes, she's very \_\_\_\_\_. He's about average weight. ~ Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_ Is he overweight? ~ Yes, he's a bit Is she very attractive? ~ Yes, she's \_\_\_\_\_
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.



# Sara.English.School

## www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# B Hair and eyes 60

	How long?	What colour?	What kind?	
	short	blonde	straight	
		light brown		
She's got	medium-length	dark brown	curly	hair
	lana	grey		
	long	black	wavy	
		brown eyes 💿		
		green eyes		
He's got		blne eyes		
	a beard	a moustache	(2)	

- 4 Cross out the adjective you don't need.
  - ► She's got long, dark brown, black hair. (or She's got long, dark brown, black hair.)
  - 1 I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
  - 2 Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
  - 3 My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
  - 4 My brother's got short, grey, black hair and a moustache.
  - 5 My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.
- Somplete the questions. (You will write your answers in Exercise 6.)

		ABOUTTOU
<b>&gt;</b>	Is your hair brown? Is it dark brown or light brown?	No, it's blonde.
1	Is your hair long, m, or s?	можност и вимоничения посоринации поставления ини
2	What colour is it: bl, bl, or g?	
3	Is your hair st, w, or c?	promoved by
4	Have you got a b or a m?	, and a state of the state of t
5	Have you got br eyes?	

A POLIT VOL

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5. Then, if possible, tell another person about yourself.

I've got long, dark hair and...

#### (O) Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# C How old are they? 60

Age	Word/phrase
→ 18 months; before they can walk	a baby
2 → 10 or 11	a child plural children
13 → about 17	a teenager or a young person plural young people
18 →	an adnit
about 45 → 60	a middle-aged person
65 →	an elderly man or woman (more polite than old)

spo	tlight	Other phrases for age
in	his her	<b>teens</b> (13 → about 17)
in	my his her	early twenties $(20 \rightarrow 23)$ mid-thirties $(34 \rightarrow 36)$ late fifties $(57 \rightarrow 59)$

- Match 1-8 with a-i.
  - ► me (45) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
  - 1 my wife (38) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 my son (6 months) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 my daughter (7) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 my brother (47) ......
  - 5 my nephew (14) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 my aunt (63) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 my father (79) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 my niece (21) \_\_\_\_\_

- a elderly
- b in her late thirties
- c a teenager
- d in my mid-forties ✓
- e a baby
- f in her early sixties
- g an adult
- h middle-aged
- i a child
- ABOUT YOU Write the names of people in your family, or tell another student.
  - ► a baby Marcus (my sister's son) 4 an elderly woman
  - 1 a young person \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 a middle-aged person
  - 3 someone in his/her twenties \_\_\_\_\_\_ 7 someone in his/her fifties \_\_\_\_
- 5 an elderly man
- 6 a baby \_\_\_\_\_
- Test yourself. Cover column two of the table. Look at the 'age' column and say the words and phrases.
- Read the police description. Which man are the police looking for, X or Y?

The man we are looking for is in his mid-thirties. He is slim, with dark brown curly hair and a moustache. If you see him, please ring the police on 0088 997 4422.



Write a description of the other man. Use the text above to help you.

The other man is



# I can talk about character

### A What's he/she like? 60

Word	Example	Meaning
friendly	The students in my class are all really friendly; it's great.	happy to meet and talk to other people opp unfriendly
kind	He visited me a lot in hospital, which was really <b>kind</b> .	warm, friendly and always wanting to help other people
nice	I met Colin on holiday and he's a really <b>nice</b> guy.	kind and friendly (a very important word in spoken English) syn pleasant उरु horrible
fun	I love Karen; she's great <b>fun</b> .	something or someone that makes you happy
funny	John makes me laugh – he's just a really <b>funny</b> man.	making you laugh
relaxed	My parents are very <b>relaxed</b> : they don't get angry if I'm late.	calm
clever	Tom is very <b>clever</b> – the best student in our class.	able to learn and understand very quickly syn intelligent opp stupid
quiet	She's quiet, but she can be funny.	someone who is quiet doesn't say very much
serious	I like our teacher but she's very serious.	someone who is <b>serious</b> thinks a lot and doesn't laugh very much

1	Complete th	e words
Ш	Complete th	e words.

f	u	n

### spotlight

#### What's ... like?

We use this question to find out more about someone or something.

What's Jack like? ~ He's very nice.

NOT He's like very nice. What was the film like? ~ Great!

### Answer the questions.

What's...

▶ a synonym for nice? pleasant

1 the opposite of friendly?

2 a synonym for clever?

3 the opposite of nice?

4 the opposite of clever?

What do you call someone who...

- likes meeting and talking to people? <u>friendly</u>
- 5 makes you laugh?
- 6 thinks a lot and doesn't laugh a lot? \_\_\_
- 7 is usually calm?
- 8 always wants to help others? .....

### Complete the conversations.

1	What's Alex like	- He's nice, but he's	s very H	He doesn't laugh much
---	------------------	-----------------------	----------	-----------------------

3	was your grandmother like	e?	~ She was very – she always hel	lped
	everyone. And she wasto	00.	She went to university.	



### B We like each other 6

# each other



Gemma: "I met Sophie at university. I was on my own, and she came up and talked to me; she's like that. What's interesting is that we're complete opposites. She's very happy to meet new people, but I'm really shy; she's very sociable, I'm quiet; she's sporty, and I'm not. But it wasn't important. We became friends and shared a flat for two years. I'm very organized and did most of the housework. Sophie's not very tidy, and she can be lazy around the house. But she's a great cook and a really nice person."

usually tidy or untidy? .....

#### Glossary

on my own alone or without other people be complete opposites be very different shy If you're shy, you can't talk easily to people you don't know.

sociable friendly and liking to talk to people sporty liking sport and good at it

**share a flat** live in the same flat as another person

**organized** An **organized** person plans things well.

tidy A tidy person likes everything to be in the right place. OPP untidy

lazy A lazy person doesn't like working. OPP hardworking

### spotlight really

6 a very organized person?.....

**Really** is important in spoken English. It means 'very' and you can use it before most adjectives.

I'm in a **really** nice class. She was **really** horrible to me.

4		Find and write four more examples of really + ad	
6		Read the text again. Are these statements true o  Sophie likes sport.	r false? Write T or F.
	1	Gemma was alone when she met Sophie.	Listen to the CD-ROM and
	2	2 Gemma and Sophie are very different.	do the exercises.
	3	Sophie likes meeting new people	
	4	They lived together at university	
	5	Gemma's sociable.	
	6	Sophie's very unfriendly	
	7	7 Sophie's untidy.	
	8	Gemma doesn't plan things.	
6	A	ABOUT YOU <b>W</b> rite your answers or ask another s	tudent.
	W	What are you like? Are you	
	1	1 sporty or not sporty?	zy or hardworking?
	2	2 a very relaxed person? 5 qu	riet or very sociable?



# 15 I can describe relationships

### A Romantic relationships 6.

Max is my partner, and we have a very good relationship. We've been together for about two years. I started to go out with him after I came to London. We met at my ex-boyfriend's house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to get to know each other. Now Max wants us to get married and have a baby, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married couples who have split up and are now divorced. I don't want that to happen to us.



#### Glossary

partner someone you have a romantic relationship with (your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband) be together be in a romantic relationship go out with someone have a romantic relationship with someone ex-boyfriend a person who was your boyfriend in the past (also ex-girlfriend, ex-wife, ex-husband) get to know someone learn about and become friends with someone get married become husband and wife have a baby become a new mother/father couple two people, often in a romantic relationship split up stop having a romantic relationship divorced married in the past but not now

#### spotlight relationship

You have a relationship with someone. It can be good I have a good relationship

with my flatmate. He has a difficult relationship with his father.

We often talk about romantic relationships with wives. boyfriends, etc.

	get/to/they/married/want They want to get married.
1	baby / last / had / a / year / they
2	split up / January / they / in
3	have / good / a / very / relationship / we
4	you / how / her / get to know / did / ?
5	three / together / for / they / years / were
6	with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out
C	omplete the sentences.

	They a very good relationship.
1	When did they a baby?
2	My boyfriend and I have been for two months.
3	I know Phil and Sue very well. They're a lovely
4	She went with him last year, but they split in January.
5	Sonia is his girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
6	My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're My father has a new
	, but I don't think they're going to married.



### B Friends 6



WHY WE LIKE

# each other

Sophie: "I get on very well with Gemma - she's great. I don't know why, because we're completely different. We first met at university, and then we became flatmates. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I ask for advice - and she always gives me good advice. We don't see each other very often now, because we live in different parts of the country, but I've known her for a long time, and she will always be my closest friend."

### Glossary

get on (well) with someone have a good relationship with someone

meet PT met see and speak to someone for the first time

become flatmates start to be flatmates (also become friends)

flatmate person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship

advice an opinion or information that you give to help someone with a problem (You give advice or you give someone advice.)

see someone talk to or visit someone know someone be friends with someone or have met them

closest friend most important friend (also best friend)

#### spotlight

#### each other

Pam and Mike really loved each other. (Pam loved Mike. and Mike loved Pam.) The two girls never listen to each other. (A doesn't listen to B. and B doesn't listen to A.)

### Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

•	We met last year.	I have known her for a year.	S
1	We live near each other.	We are flatmates.	
2	We don't get on very well.	We have a very good relationship.	
3	I see her every Saturday.	I meet her every Saturday.	
4	She's my best friend.	She's my closest friend.	
5	We became friends.	We stopped being friends.	
6	She gives me advice.	She helps me with my problems.	

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another s	tudent.
---	---------

1	Who is your closest friend?	

2 How long have you known him/her?

3 Where did you meet? ... 4 How did you get to know him/her?

5 How often do you see each other? .....

6 Why do you get on well with him/her?

# 16 I can say how I feel

### A Physical feelings 60

Word/phrase	Example	Meaning				
What's the matter?	What's the matter? ~ Nothing.	What's the problem?				
be/feel tired	I feel tired. I'm going to bed.	want to rest or sleep				
be/feel hungry	I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?	want something to eat				
be/feel thirsty	I'm thirsty. Can I have a juice?	want something to drink				
be/feel boiling	I'm boiling. Can we open a window?	very, very hot				
be/feel freezing	Where's my coat? I'm freezing.	very, very cold				
be/feel nervous	Did you <b>feel nervous</b> before the exam? ~ Yes, I did, but it was OK.					
be/feel ill	He <b>felt ill</b> after the meal. I think he had too much to eat.					
not be/feel well	He doesn't feel well, so I told him to go to bed.					

0	How do	vou feel?	Write	vour	answers.
~	11011 40	you icci.	*****	y ca.	411344613

- ➤ You're outside. It's -10 degrees. I'm freezing.
- 1 It's the end of a working day.
- 2 It's minutes before an important exam.
- 3 You've had nothing to drink for hours.
- 4 You've had nothing to eat for hours.
- 5 You're working. It's 35 degrees.
- 6 Your body temperature is 39.5 degrees.

### Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry ?
- 1 What's the \_\_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ I \_\_\_\_\_ ill.
- 2 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ Yes, I'm going to bed.
- 3 What's the \_\_\_\_\_\_. I need a coat.
- 4 It's very hot in here. ~ Yes, I know. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Is it your driving test tomorrow? ~ Yes, and I'm feeling a bit \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ the matter? ~ | don't feel \_\_\_\_\_.



Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meaning. Can you say the words?



### **B** Emotions 6



1 He's happy.



2 She's sad. SYN unhappy



3 He's excited.



4 She's worried.



5 He's angry.



She's frightened. SYN scared



7 He's embarrassed. 8 She's surprised.





9 He's in love.



10 She's upset.

spotlight	get + adjective
-----------	-----------------

Get can mean 'become' or 'start to be'. My wife gets worried if I'm late. The children got very excited at the party.

### Complete the words.

- ▶ ha ₽ ₽ ₽
- 1 ang\_\_
- 2 wor\_\_\_\_
- 3 up\_\_\_\_
- 4 sca \_\_\_\_
- sur \_ i \_ \_ \_ \_
- fri\_\_\_\_\_
- unh \_\_\_\_
- 8 emb\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 ex\_\_\_\_\_

### **5** Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I was <u>sad</u> when I heard that her mother was very ill.
- 1 The teacher got \_\_\_\_\_\_ because the children were running round the classroom.
- 2 I got 100% in my English exam. I was very happy but also very \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I got very \_\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.
- 4 My brothers get very \_\_\_\_\_ when they're watching football on TV.
- 5 I made a stupid mistake and everyone laughed, I felt very \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 My sister and Joe are getting married. My parents are \_\_\_\_\_\_ because they like him.
- 7 I was very \_\_\_\_\_ when my boyfriend found a new girlfriend.
- 8 My aunt never travels by plane. She's \_\_\_\_\_ of flying.
- 9 They met on holiday. I think they're in \_\_\_\_\_.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.



# Review: People

### Unit 8

Complete the dialogue using information in the notes to help you.

Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63	
São Paulo	
05065 - 002	
Brazil	
Art teacher	
Married; one son, Marco, 7	

Α	Hello there. Now, what's your
	family name ?
В	Costa.
Α	Right, and your first (1) ?
В	Helena.

В	Helena.
Α	OK, Helena, and where do (2)
	from?
D	I'm (2)

Α	Oh, where in Brazil (4) ?
В	São Paulo.
Α	Right, and could (5)
	your address?
В	It's Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63, São Paulo
Α	And the (6) ?
В	It's 05065-002.
Α	And what do you (7)?
В	I
Α	Oh, really? And (9)
	married?
В	Yes, I am. And I've got a son.
Α	Oh, (10)
	is he?
В	He's seven.

### Unit 9

Find 11 more words, phrases, or short words from the unit. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across  $\rightarrow$ .

M	Α	R	ı	Т	Α	L	S	T	Α	Т	U	S
												U
Т	D	U	Т	1	C	K	G	G	D	L	М	R
Н	Α	E	F	0	R	Е	Ν	Α	М	Ε	1	N
Ε	Т	М	Α	1	L	W	0	М	R	0	S	Α
1												A M
R	Ε	Α	Р	L	Α	D	D	R	E	S	S	

### Unit 10

1 Find 13 more family words in the wordsquare.

A	G	0	R	Е	L	Α	T	1	V	Ε	S
G	S	J	0	G	Υ	W	E	S	G	T	1
K	1	D	Α	U		Н	Τ	E	R	D	0
0	S	Υ	M	E	F	0	Т	N	Α	U	М
Α	T	В	X	Н	U	S	В	Α	N	D	Ī
U	Ε	R		C	U	N	L	1	D	Q	S
N	R	В	R	0	Т	Η	E	R	F	U	
T	1	P	W	U	Ν	C	Ĺ	E	Α	-	N
L	Ν	0	Т	S			C	Α	Τ	M	Ū
0	L	W	F	1	S	Ν	Ε	P	Н	Ε	W
P	Α	R	Ε	Ν	T		J	0	Ε	T	
R	W	U	Ν	ı	Ε	C	Ε	Ε	R	F	Α

### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com 2 Correct one mistake in each sentence. He's eighteen years. He's eighteen. My brother has eighteen years old. 2 I born in 1990. ..... 3 My sister is younger that me. \_\_\_\_\_ 4 His parents are divorce. 6 She is more old than her brother. 7 We spend together a lot of time. 8 Who is the youngest of the family? Unit 11 1 Complete the table with the verbs in the box. push / pick something up stand up hold pull jump carry turn something off ride put something down drop run climb Using your hands Using your feet or legs push 2 Circle the correct word. You get on a bus/a house. 6 You can hold a bag/a classroom. 1 You can open a door/a light. 7 You can break some juice/a pencil. 2 You can touch a park/a wall. 8 You can climb a tree/a bus. 3 You can turn on a radio/a watch. 9 You can close a TV/a book. 4 You can pick up a car/a bicycle. 10 You can sit down on a bed/the sea. 5 You can ride a car/a bicycle.

### Unit 12

1	Above or belo	w the waist?	Write A	(above)	or B	(below)	).

	footB	2	ankle	5	shoulder	8	knee	11	bottom
<b>&gt;</b>	head A	3	foot	6	chin	9	toes	12	neck
1	ears	4	chest	7	leg	10	nose	13	mouth

### 2 Write another part of the body which is between the other two. Look at the example.

	nose mouth	chin	3	wrist1	fingers	6	eyes mouth
1	hand	shoulder	4	ankle	toes		
2	chest	, head	5	back	eg		



### Unit 13

### 1 Write about the people.



É		
She's tall, slim and attractiv	e. She's got medium-length, dark b	rown hair. She's a teenager.
2	THE PRODUCTION OF THE PRODUCTI	entational and a second a second and a second a second and a second and a second and a second and a second an
4		
Put the words in order from yo	oung (1) to old (9).	
in your early thirties	a baby 1	a child
a teenager	in your mid-twenties	in your early sixties
middle-aged	elderly	in your late thirties

### Unit 14

2

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

Positive	Negative	Positive or negative	funny stupid
friendly	unfriendly		quiet clever friendly / horrible kind untidy sociable organized serious unfriendly /

2	Comp	ete	the	dia	logues.
---	------	-----	-----	-----	---------

8 She plans everything. ~ Yes, she's very \_

4	Complete the dialogues.
	She's nice. ~ Yes, very <u>pleasant</u> .
1	She doesn't do any work. ~ No, she's very
2	Does she meet new people easily? ~ No, she's very
3	Did you live in the same place? ~ Yes, we a flat.
4	I really like being with her. ~ Yes, she's great
5	She's clever, isn't she? ~ Yes, very
6	Were you with other people? ~ No, I was
7	She makes me laugh. ~ I know, she's very

#### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### Unit 15

#### 1 Circle the correct word.

Lucy met/knew John at a disco when she was just twenty. She (1) got/went out with him for a year. Then suddenly, one weekend, he took her to Paris where they got (2) marry/married. They have a very good (3) relation/relationship, and they (4) get/go on well with each other's family, too. Last year, they (5) got/had a baby girl called Paula. They've been (6) together/each other for eight years now. I don't think they will ever split (7) off/up, or (8) get/go divorced, because they are a very happy (9) couple/two.

2 Complete the questions with a verb from the box.

2 She's really unhappy at the moment. \_\_\_\_\_

3 He was embarrassed about it. \_\_\_\_\_

4 I don't feel well. \_\_\_\_\_

5 It's freezing in this room. ....

	become (x2) is (x2) give get (x2)	are <b>√</b> see
<b></b>	Are they married?	5 Does your mother you good advice?
1	How did you to know Jack?	6 How did you flatmates?
2	When did you friends with Jana?	7 Do you on well with your sister?
3	Elena your closest friend?	8 your cousin divorced?
4	Do you your ex-boyfriend often?	
11	ni+ 16	
U	nit 16	
1	Correct the spelling mistakes.	
•	He's frightend. frightened	6   feel tierd.
1	Why are they exited?	7 She's scard of dogs.
2	I'm hangry.	8 Is he nervos?
3	She was very suprised.	9 What's the mater?
4	I think he was embarassed.	10 She's thursty.
5	I'm very worrid.	
2	Are these feelings positive or negative? Wr	rite P or N.
<b>•</b>	She's very sadN	6 My brother's in love
1	My daughter's excited about the dog.	7 He's scared of her

8 I was very upset about it. \_\_\_\_\_

10 They're all happy. \_\_\_\_\_

9 I felt nervous before I met him. \_\_\_\_\_

# I can describe my routine

### A Weekdays (Monday to Friday) 👀



I usually get up at 7.00.





I get dressed.



I have breakfast.



I usually leave home at 8.00,



I get to work at 8,30.



I finish work at 5.00.



I have dinner at 8.15.



**I go to bed** at 11.30.



I sleep seven hours a night.

#### spotlight usually and normally

Iusually/normally go to work by bus means that I go to work by bus most days.

### Match the verbs in column 1 with words in columns 2 and 3. Write the sentences.

	1	2	3	
•	I get up ✓	work	before breakfast	I get up at 7.30 a.m.
1	I get	at 🗸	at 11 o'clock	
2	I have	seven hours	7.30 a.m. 🗸	
3	I leave	dressed	at 6 p.m.	
4	I finish	home	with my family	
5	I have	dinner	a night	
6	I go	breakfast	at 8.00 a.m	
7	I sleep	to bed	at 8.30 a.m.	

### Complete the questions with the correct verb. (You will write your answers in Exercise 3.)

<b>&gt;</b>	What time do you use	ually get up	in the morning?
1	Do you dr	essed before or	after breakfast?

2 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ a shower in the morning?

3 What time do you .\_\_\_\_ home in the morning?

4 What time do you \_\_\_\_\_ to school/university/work

5 Who do you .... dinner with?

What time do you normally \_\_\_\_ to bed?

I get u		

**ABOUT YOU** 



### [O] Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

- **3** ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the sentences. Say the phrases.

### B Weekends (Saturday and Sunday) 60

What do you do at the weekend?

During the week I usually stay in after school. I often study in the evenings, watch TV, listen to music, or just talk to my family. Once or twice a week, my boyfriend comes round and we have dinner together or go and see a film. At the weekend, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning I usually go shopping with a friend, or I go to the gym, and sometimes I study in the afternoon. I go out with my boyfriend in the evening. On Sundays, I get up late. We often go for a walk, and in the summer we play tennis.

### Glossary

at the weekend on Saturday and Sunday during the week from Monday to Friday stay in stay at home once a week one time in every week twice a week two times in every week come round come to my home go out leave home to go to a bar, cinema, restaurant, etc. go shopping go to the shops to buy clothes, CDs, etc. (When you do the shopping you buy food.) go to the gym

late after the usual time opp early go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself play tennis

Find nine more phrases. You can go up  $\uparrow$ , down  $\downarrow$ , or across  $\rightarrow$ .

the	shopping	go	for	a
do	week <sub>A</sub>	or	once	walk
during	> the	twice	a	week
stay	tennis	go	shopping	at
in	play	go	gym	the
come	round	to	the	weekend

6 Complete the sentences.

I no to a restaurant Once

	l go to a restaurant <u>Once</u> or twice a week.
1	Do you want toshopping?
2	Come to my flat after work.
3	I can't tennis this weekend.
4	Do you want to go on Saturday?
5	the week I usually stay
6	I'm really tired today because I went to bedlast night.
7	What are you doing the weekend?
8	go to thetwice a week because I like to exercise.
9	l often, at 8.00 in the morning.
10	We often go and



### Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# Frequency words 60

100%					0%
always	ays often	sometimes	occasionally	hardly ever or rarely	never
		spotlight ev	ery and all		
ese adverbs go before the main rb (e.g. get up), but after an	The Library of The				

Th auxiliary verb (e.g. do, does, have, can or be).

I always get up late on Sundays. Do you often go out in the evening? We occasionally go for a walk. I'm hardly ever ill.

He goes out every day means 'he goes out on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday and Sunday'. Be careful!

He works every day means 'he works from Monday to Sunday'. He works all day means 'he works from 9.00 a.m. to 6.00 p.m.'

### Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<b>•</b>	l always go shopping on Saturdays.	I go shopping every Saturday.	S
1	I sometimes work at home.	I often work at home.	
2	She's hardly ever late for work.	She's rarely late for work.	
3	We often finish classes early.	We finish classes early every day.	
4	I never eat meat.	I occasionally eat meat.	
5	She always has a shower in the morning.	She has a shower every morning.	
6	In August we play tennis every day.	In August we play tennis all day.	

### 8 Write the sentences using a word from the box.

	every day	always	often 🗸	hardly ever	all day	occasionally	never	
						en goes to rest	aurants.	
1	Haruko alw	ays gets up	early.					
2	Hiro goes t	o the gym o	once a year					
3	Haruko sta	ys in seven	nights a wee	k	ant my (m) (m) (m)	to be seen		
4	Hiro studie	s from 9.00	to 5.00.	www.mananana.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.a.				
5	Haruko do	esn't have a	shower in th	ne morning.		- mm m.		
6	Hiro goes t	to the cinem	na about six t	imes a year	- · Morning continues	Market		

### ABOUT YOU True or false? If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.

-	I hardly ever play tennis. False. I often play tennis.
1	I always have a shower before breakfast.
2	I often go out on Friday evening.
3	I never listen to music in the evening.
4	I rarely study on Sunday.
5	I sometimes watch TV at the weekend.
õ	I never work in the evening.
7	I <b>usually</b> go shopping on Monday.
8	I occasionally go to the gym after dinner.



### I can talk about clothes

### A Clothes 6



- Complete the words.
  - ▶ s<u>uit</u>
  - 1 i\_\_\_\_t
  - 2 t\_\_\_\_s
  - 3 j\_\_\_\_r
  - 4 c\_\_t

- r\_\_\_\_t
- 6 T-\_\_\_t
- d\_\_\_s
- j\_\_\_s
- s\_\_\_\_r

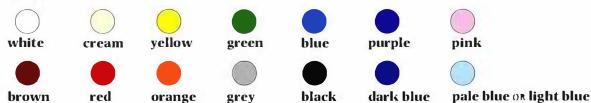
#### spotlight wear

I often wear jeans. She isn't wearing a skirt today.

I wore a blue shirt yesterday.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

### **B** Colours 6



- 3 Look at the clothes above. True or false? Write T or F.

  - ▶ red trousers F
  - 1 a pale blue shirt \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 dark blue jeans \_\_\_\_\_ a light blue coat \_\_\_\_\_
- grey trousers \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 a black suit \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 a brown jacket .....
- 7 a pale yellow top \_\_\_\_\_ 8 a pink raincoat \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 a blue skirt \_\_\_\_
- an orange and white T-shirt'\_ 10
- 11 a purple dress ......
- 12 a cream jumper \_\_\_\_\_
- Test yourself. Cover the words and name the colours.







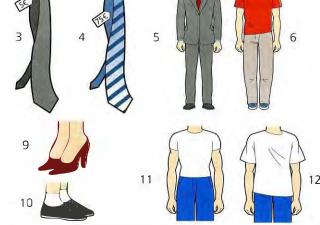
# 19 I can buy clothes

### Do Unit 18 first

### A Describing clothes 60

- 1 long
- 2 short
- 3 cheap
- 4 expensive
- 5 smart
- 6 casual
- 7 small/little
- 8 large/big
- 9 uncomfortable
- comfortable 10
- tight 11
- 12 loose





I like it - it's really nice/lovely.

I don't like it – it's horrible/awful.

### Look at the pictures and describe the clothes.

- → a cheap tie
- 2 c shoes
- 3 a s handbag
- c clothes

- 5 a l\_\_\_\_\_\_T-shirt
- 7 s clothes

### Circle the correct word.

- My handbag is very large/small, so | put lots in it.
- 1 I like these trainers, but they're very comfortable/uncomfortable.
- 2 I've got some really nice/horrible boots. I wear them a lot.
- 3 At the weekend, I usually wear casual/smart clothes.
- 4 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear cheap/expensive clothes.
- 5 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a small/large T-shirt.
- 6 You need your long/short coat today; it's really cold.
- If you are going to the gym, it's better to wear tight/loose clothes.
- That suit is awful/lovely you must buy it.

### Write the opposite of the underlined word.

- ➤ You need a <u>large</u> belt. <u>small</u>
- 1 She's wearing a <u>long</u> coat.
- 2 Are those boots <u>comfortable</u>? 3 We can wear smart clothes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Was the belt very cheap?
- 5 She doesn't want tight trousers.
- 6 Does this look nice?

Test yourself. Cover the words and say the adjectives and clothes in the pictures.



### **B** Talking about size 60

Questions	Answers	Problems with size
What size are you? What size do you take?	I'm a (size) 12. I take size 40. small/medium/large	It's They're It doesn't They don't  It's They're It doesn't
		It's too long.
	customer	They're too big.
shop assistant		

- **5** Complete the sentences.
  - 1 What ▶ size are you?
    - ~ I'm \_\_\_\_\_\_14.
  - 2 Is she small, \_\_\_\_\_, or large?
  - 3 I'm sorry, this shirt is the \_\_\_\_\_ size.
  - 4 Does this jumper \_\_\_\_\_?
    - ~ No, it's \_\_\_\_\_ tight for me.
  - 5 What size do you \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Small.
  - 6 1 like the trousers but they don't \_\_\_\_\_\_; they're \_\_\_\_\_long.

#### too and very spotlight

There is a difference in meaning between too and very. Her coat is very long. (It's OK.) Her coat is too long. (It's not OK.) These trousers are very tight, but I'm going to buy them. These boots are too tight; I can't wear them.

### 6 Look at the pictures. What's the problem?



The jacket's too short.



1





3



# Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# C In a shop 🚱

6 How do you usually pay?

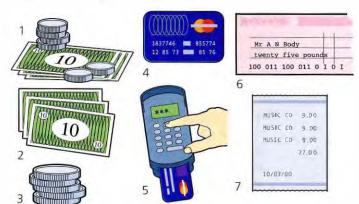
	in a shop •••		
A sl	nop assistant (SA) and a customer (C) are talk	sing	Glossary
SA	Do you need any help?		Do you need any help? also Can I help
C	Yes, I'm looking for a smart, black skirt.		you?
SA	What size do you take?		I'm looking for $= I$ want
С	I'm a 12.		<b>try something on</b> put something on to see if the size is right
C	Oh, this is lovely. Can I try it on?		changing room a place where you try
SA	Yes, sure. The <b>changing room</b> is over there.		something on
С	Oh na it'a taa tight		That looks (really nice) = I think it's (really nice) on you
SA	Oh, no, it's too tight. Here's a size 14.		pay give money for something
071	Here's a size 14.		cash desk the place where you pay
SA	That looks really nice.		credit card e.g. Visa, American Express
C	Thanks. Yes, it's finc. I think I'll take it.		
	Where do I pay?		
SA	The <b>cash desk</b> is at the front.		spotlight   I'll take it/I'll leave it
SA	How would you like to pay?		When you decide to buy something in
C	By credit card.		a shop, you say 'I'll take it/them'.
SA	That's fine. Thank you.		NOT 1 take it/1 buy it.
7			If you decide not to buy something, you
7	Write the words in correct sentences.		say '(No), I'll leave it/them. thanks'.
	► help/can/1/you/? Can I help you?		
	1   / where / pay / do / ?		
	2 thanks / no / I'll / it / leave		
	4 dress/can/on/this/try/1/?		
	5 pair/l'm/of/looking/trousers/for/a		
	6 help / you / need / do / any / ?		a with the et of shorts.
8	Write the final word in each sentence.		
U	1.1	_	Fugura \A/hara/a tha abanaina
			Excuse me. Where's the changing?
	1 Can I try these?		Do you need any?
	2 Pay at the cash	7	Oh, that looks You must buy it.
	3   like these. I'll take,	8	How would you like to?
	4 I'd like to pay by credit		
9	ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask a	no	ther student.
	1 Do you like shopping for clothes?	oly day but a	
•			
	5 Do you always try clothes on?	<i>-</i> 1 i	



Do Unit 1 first

# 20 I can talk about money

# A Money in shops 60



You are in a shop and decide to buy three CDs. They **cost** €9 **each**, which is €27 **altogether**. You can pay **in cash**¹ (**notes**² and **coins**³): for example, you give the shop assistant €30, and he gives you €3 **change**. You can also pay by **credit card**⁴. The assistant puts your card in a machine and asks you to **enter**⁵ (or **put in**) your **PIN**. You can also pay by **debit card** or **cheque**⁶. At the end, he gives you your CDs and a **receipt**<sup>7</sup>.

### Glossary

cost PT cost How much does it cost? = How much is it?

**€9 each** = **€**9 for one

**€27 altogether** = €27 for everything change the money you get back if you give the assistant more than something cost debit card. If you use a debit card, the money comes out of your bank account (where you put money in and take it out).

PIN = Personal Identification Number (also

PIN = Personal Identification Number (also PIN number)

### spotlight Money

€5.30 five euros thirty or five thirty Nor five euros and thirty £10.99 ten pounds ninety-nine or ten ninety-nine

a ten pound/euro note NOT a ten pounds/ euros note

1	Correct th	he mistakes.
		ic iiiistaitesi

	Can I pay for cheque? Can I pay by cheque:
1	The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty.
2	Could you put your PIN, please?
3	She paid for the dress of cash.
4	I've only got a 50 pounds note.
5	They're €6 for each.
6	Have you got a bank count?
7	Three books. That's €42 together.
8	The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 money.

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

Α	ľd	like this	watch,	please.
_				***

- B Fine. How would you like to pay?
- A By debit (►) card
- B Thanks. Could you (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_, please?...
  Thank you. Here's your watch and your

  (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- A Thank you.

- C Hi. How much do these peaches (4) \_\_\_\_\_?
- D They're 50 cents (5) \_\_\_\_\_
- C I'll have six, please, and a melon.
- D Thank you. That's €4.30 (6) \_\_\_\_\_
- C I'm sorry, I've only got a €50 (7) \_\_\_\_\_.
- D That's OK. I've got lots of (8)



#### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### **B** Money in adverts ••



Pay your gas bill online and save 5%.



Earn £30 an hour in your own home. Ring 0990 557731.

Play the Lottery and win €1,000,000!

- Circle the correct answer.
  - I bought this table online free.
  - 1 What's the price/bill of these shoes?
  - 2 I don't spend/pay a lot on food.
  - 3 I bought ten bottles and earned/saved €3.
  - 4 I won/earned £100 in the lottery.

### Glossary

sell PT sold give something to someone who pays you money for it opp buy pr bought price the money you have to pay for something (If something is half price, you pay 50%.)

spend money on something PT spent pay money for something

free If something is free, you don't pay for it. bill a piece of paper which shows how much you need to pay

online on the internet

save If you save 5% on a bill, you pay 95% of the bill.

fare the money you pay to go by plane, train, etc.

earn get money for the work you do lottery game where you buy tickets and can win money

win PT won get money etc. in a game

- 5 How much was the train bill/fare?
- 6 Doctors win/earn a lot of money.
- I bought/sold my old car and got a new one.
- She paid the restaurant bill/receipt.

4	Test yourself. Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms

•	pay paid	3	sell	6	save
1	buy	4	earn		
2	spand	5	Min		

5 Complete the questions with a word from the box. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)

online price fares earn free spend / bill

### ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

$\blacktriangleright$	How much do you spend on food every week?	I spend about £20.
1	Do you ever shop?	production and registry we administration and registry to the control of the cont
2	Is your phone expensive?	
3	Is water in restaurants?	topograph or accommon manufacture and accommon manufacture of the state of the stat
4	What's the of a litre of milk?	the statement of the st
5	Are train cheap?	- Description of the second se
6	Do woman more than man?	

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 or ask another student.



### I can talk about the weather

### A What's the weather like? 6

	Adjectives	Verbs	Nouns
	It's sunny.	The sun's <b>shining</b> .	sun/sunshine
	It's cloudy.		cloud
	It's wet.	It's raining.	rain u
	It's windy.	The wind's blowing.	wind
*	It's icy.		ice u
	It's <b>foggy</b> .		fog u
		It's snowing.	snow t

### Match 1-9 with a-j.

	It'sd
1	lt

- 2 The wind \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 It isn't
- 4 The sun \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Is.....
- 6 There's a bit \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 There's a lot of \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 It doesn't \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 What's .....

- a of cloud today.
- b it foggy outside?
- c isn't raining.
- d cold this morning. <
- e snow on the roads.
- f rain a lot here.
- g the weather like?
- h very windy.
- blew my hat off.
- is shining.

#### a lot (of)/a bit (of) spotlight

a lot of/a bit of + noun We had a lot of rain. There's a bit of fog.

verb + a lot/a bit It snowed a lot. It's raining a bit.

a bit + adjective It's a bit foggy today. It was a bit windy.

### Rewrite the sentences using the correct word.

It was very icy \_\_\_\_. ► There was a lot of ice. There's no \_\_\_\_\_. 1 It isn't raining. 2 Is the sun shining? Is it \_\_\_\_ ? 3 We often have snow. It often \_\_\_\_.

She doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ weather. 4 She doesn't like fog. There was a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on Friday. 5 It was very windy on Friday.

6 There are no clouds. It isn't \_\_\_\_.

### Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and look at the pictures. What's the weather like?



### **B** Wet and dry weather **6**



In my country, the weather in spring is very **changeable**. It can be **pleasant** and **dry**, but we often have **showers**. It can get **hot** in the summer for two or three months. and in the cities it is often humid, especially before a **storm**. It's **cooler** on the coast, where there is usually a sea **breeze**. In autumn, we get some **heavy rain**, perhaps with thunder and lightning. In winter, it can be dry, sunny and freezing, or grey and damp.

### Glossary

changeable changing a lot pleasant nice dry opp wet **shower** a short period of rain hot opp cold humid warm, wet and uncomfortable storm see picture breeze a light, pleasant wind cool nothotor warm, but pleasant heavy rain a lot of rain thunder the loud noise of a storm lightning see picture freezing very, very cold damp cold and a bit wet

4	Circle	the	correct	word.
---	--------	-----	---------	-------

- ► Humid weather is very pleasant uncomfortable)
- There was a bit of sunshine between the showers/lightning.
- 2 Do you like watching the lightning/thunder when it's stormy?
- The air in the Sahara Desert is dry/humid, and it's very hot/cool at midday.
- 4 Showers usually last a few hours/minutes.
- 5 In cold, wet weather, your clothes feel damp/humid.
- 6 By the sea you get a nice breeze/wind.

- ► It's wet outside. (rain) It's raining outside.
- 1 It rained a lot last night. (heavy) There was
- 2 It was warm and damp yesterday. (humid) It \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. (shower) There
- 4 The weather changes a lot. (changeable) The weather \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 It isn't wet today. (dry) It
- 6 We had heavy rain and thunder, (storm) We had

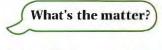
### 6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Make the sentences true for your country.

- ► We often have storms in July. We never have storms in July.
- 1 We have a lot of showers in the spring.
- 2 In winter it's always freezing at night.
- 3 The weather is always the same in the summer. 4 We sometimes have heavy rain for 24 hours.
- 5 It often snows in the winter.
- 6 Our winters are usually dry.
- 7 We often have thunder and lightning.
- 8 It is usually hot and dry in summer.



#### 22 I can talk about illness Do Unit 12 first

### A Common problems 6.



I don't feel well.















a headache

toothache

stomach-ache

a cold

a cough

a sore throat











flu

a temperature

a pain in my leg also my leg hurts

backache

I feel sick

### Circle the correct answer.

- I'm(I've got)a temperature.
- My back pain/hurts.
- 2 I feel/'ve got a cold.
- 3 He doesn't feel/be well.
- 4 I feel/'ve got toothache.
- 5 Do you feel/be sick?
- 6 My knee feels/hurts.

- He's got flu/a flu?
- 8 Is/Has she got a temperature?
- 9 I hurt/'ve got a pain in my eye.
- 10 Is/Has she got a temperature?
- She is/'s got a sore throat. 11
- 12 I don't feel/haven't got a cough.

#### spotlight be ill/sick

Ill means 'not well'. Rafa's not here today; he's ill. Be sick usually means to bring up food from your stomach (also vomit). If you feel sick, you think you are going to be sick.

### Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I had to stand up for ten hours; now I've got backache
- 1 She has always smoked a lot, and now she's got a bad
- 3 I walked 20 kilometres today, and my feet
- 4 What's the ? You look terrible. ~ I don't feel
- 5 I ate too much at lunch and now I've got ...
- 6 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels
- I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got
- 8 I can't eat anything; I've got a sore





Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.



### Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### B What should I do? 6



### Glossary

go and see go to, visit GP (General Practitioner) family doctor chemist's shop where you get medicine (also pharmacy) lie down



for a while for a short time stay in bed go to bed and not get up for a day or two for a short time (not more than three days)

#### spotlight should + verb

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. Should is used for giving advice.

I feel terrible. ~ You should go to bed. You shouldn't go to work today.

There are more practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

- Cross out one word you don't need in each sentence.
  - ► I don't feel pae very well.
  - 1 You should to go to the chemist's.
  - 2 Go and lie you down for a while.
  - 3 Go and see your GP doctor.
  - 4 Stay in the bed and don't do anything.
- 5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
- 6 You should go and to see your doctor.
- 7 You shouldn't don't go to work today.
- 8 Lie down for the a while.
- Write some advice to people using should and the word in brackets.

1 I've got backache. (lie)

- ► I've got a cold. (chemist's) You should go to the chemist's.
- 2 My ear hurts. (pharmacy)
- 3 I've got a sore throat, a cough and a temperature. (stay)
- 4 I feel sick. (while) \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I've got flu. (GP)

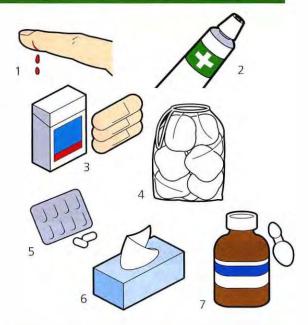


# 23 I can get help at the chemist's 64

Do Unit 22 first

In a chemist's shop, a chemist (Ch) is talking to a customer (C).

- Ch Can I help you?
- Yes, I cut1 my finger yesterday, and it really hurts.
- Ch You need some antiseptic cream<sup>2</sup> for it.
- Right. Could I have some plasters<sup>3</sup> and some cotton wool4, please?
- Ch Yes, of course. That's €5.60, please.
- Ch Yes?
- C Er, I need something for a cold.
- Ch Right, well, try these tablets'-they're very good.
- C OK, and how often do I take them?
- Ch Take two tablets every four hours with water.
- C Thanks. And I'd like a box of tissues6, please, and some cough **medicine**<sup>7</sup>.



### Glossary

need If you need something, it's necessary or important for you to have it.

antiseptic You put antiseptic cream on a cut to clean it. try use something (e.g. a tablet, medicine) to see if it helps

take a tablet eat a tablet (also take medicine)

#### spotlight Asking for things in a chemist's

You can ask for something for a problem or an illness in a chemist's. Could I have something for a headache, (please)? means 'please give me some medicine because I've got a headache.' I need something for a cold.

6	Correct the spelling.	Po	caroful.	000	ic	corroct
U	Correct the spelling.	вe	caretui:	one	IS	correct

- chimist chemist 3 something 6 farmacist \_\_\_\_\_ 1 coton wool \_\_\_\_\_ 4 anteseptic 7 creme 7
- Complete the sentences using phrases from the box.

for toothache, please help you a sore throat some plasters, please take these tablets wool this medicine – it's very good cream tablet three times a day for your finger a box of ✓

#### Customer

- I'd like a box of tissues, please.
  6 You need some plasters \_\_\_\_\_\_. 1 Have you got something for \_\_\_\_\_ ? 7 Try \_\_\_\_\_. 2 How often do I \_\_\_\_\_? 3 I need something \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I need some cotton \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Could I have \_\_\_\_\_?

#### Chemist

- 9 Do you need antiseptic \_\_\_\_\_?



Test yourself. Cover the conversations. Look at the pictures and say the words.



# Review: Everyday life

1 You wear them inside your shoes.

2 You wear it on your head.

3 You wear them on your hands.

4 You wear them on your feet.

5 You wear it on your wrist.

### Unit 17

1

1		t the prepos					•						
	•	We often go	on Sati	urday nig	ht. (out).	We oft	en go	out	on Satu	irday night.			
	1 We sometimes go a walk after lunch. (for)												
	2 Do you usually play tennis the weekend? (at)												
	3	3 I usually go the gym, and then I go home. (to)											
	4	She listens mu	usic on	her MP3	player w	hen she	goes	shop	ping. (to	-			
	5	On Sundays I	often s	tay and v	watch TV.	(in)				manuminanius espeiaemies	1444-01-144-01-144-01-14		
	6	I talk my pare	nts eve	ry evenir	ng. (to)					de somme ou minute de manuelle man			
	7	My sister occa	asionall	y comes	and we h	ave dinr	er to	gethe	er. (round	)			
	8	What time do											
2	Co	mplete Jana	's dail	y routin	e below	using	phras	es a	– k.				
	a	the shopping					g	to b	ed at mid	dnight			
	b	breakfast tog	ether				h	hom	ie				
	C	up at 6.30 a.r	m 🗸				i	befo	re break	fast			
	d	to work at ab	out 9.3	10			j		ower				
	е	a shave					k	dinn	er toget	her			
	f	work at 6.00	p.m. a	nd go ho	me								
	(1) (4)	husband, Ma , I get o , then way to work.	dressed Marco	(2) and I leav	_ , and Ma ve (5)	arco alw I g	ays h	as a s	hower a	nd (3) e and do (6)	We have		
L	In	it 18											
1	Co	mplete the	senten	ces with	n words	from t	he bo	X.					
		tie watch	hat	socks	T-shirt	belt	jum	oer	tights	sandals 🗸	gloves	boot	ts
	•	You wear the	m on y	our feet	in summe	r. sand	als						



6 You wear it round your neck.

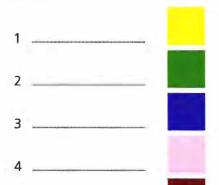
8 You wear them over your legs and feet. \_

9 You can wear it under a shirt. 10 You wear it round your waist. \_\_\_\_\_

7 You wear it over a shirt.

# Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### 2 Label the colours.



6	энтрановон	
7		
8	*	
9	интення подружний меня при на при	
10		

### 3 Write a, some or a pair of.

	a	hat	2	jeans	6	jacket
	some	jumpers	3	ties	7	trainers
-	a pair of	gloves	4	trousers	8	sandals
1		scarf	5	shirts		

### Unit 19

### 1 Complete the puzzle. Answer 1 – 16. Follow the arrows.

►U									
N						10 M			
С	² L	3 C		7 P			7. 1	14 A	
0							13 C		16 N
М									
F			6 C	8 H					
0	¹T				9 C				
R	E	45				11 H			
T	L		5 T				12W		15 L
Α.	В								

Opposite of	comfortable.
	Opposite of

- 1 OK, I'll \_\_\_\_ it.
- 2 Opposite of tight.
- 3 Opposite of expensive.
- 4 What \_\_\_\_\_ are you? ~ I'm a 14.
- 5 Can | \_\_\_\_\_ it on?
- 6 The \_\_\_\_\_ room is over there.
- 7 I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ in cash.
- 8 Synonym for awful.

- 9 The place where you pay in a shop is the \_\_\_
- 10 Small, \_\_\_\_\_ or large?
- 11 Can i \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- 12 It's the \_\_\_\_\_ size. It's too small.
- 13 Opposite of smart.
- 14 A person who works in a shop is a shop \_\_\_\_
- 15 No, thanks, I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it. It's too expensive.
- 16 Do you \_\_\_\_ any help?

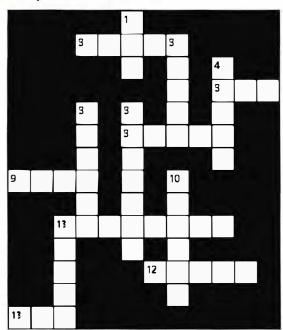
# Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

2 Cd	omplete the conversation	between the shop assistant	t (SA) and the customer (C).	
SA	Hello, do you need any ▶ _h	elp?		
C	Yes, I'm (1)			
SA	Right. What size do you (2)	?		
C	Oh, size 10, I think.			
SA	OK, well, how about these?			
C			y them (4)?	
SA	The changing (5)	is over there.		
Later				
SA	Hmm, they (6)		(0) 12 planes	
(		small. Can i try on a	12, please?	
Later		1 1/1 + alco (10)	\A/bara do 1/11\	2
C	At the (12)		Where do I (11)	!
SA	At the (IZ)	desk.		
1.1.0	:+ 20			
Un	it 20			
1 Tr	ue or false? Write T or F.			
•	You pay a receiptF			
1		neque or bill		
2		pay for things you buy online.		
3				
4		€60 altogether, they cost €180	each	
5		shop, they usually ask you to er		
6		ave to pay for it. It's free		
2 0				
	omplete the text.	inla-		
			excited! The first day, I went out and	
			(4) €3000 because it was use I p(7)(8) cash.	
			(9) very much, so I p (10)	)
			ve him the plane f(12) to Lisbor	
		girlfriend. And I've still got some		
Un	it 21			
	/rite a lot, a lot of, a bit, o			
•		_yesterday – I couldn't go out.		
1	lt's wet			
2		fog this morning. I couldn't		
3			s over twenty centimetres a day.	
4		rain, but it's not much. You do		
5		last night – only two centim		
6	We had	sun yesterday – from morning	to evening. It was lovely.	



### Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### 2 Complete the crossword.



Δ	C	2	cc
$\overline{}$		u	22

- 2 The wind \_\_\_\_\_ more in autumn.
- 5 Noun from icy.
- 8 Warm and damp weather feels \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 You need good \_\_\_\_\_ for skiing.
- 11 Very cold.
- 12 It rained a lot we had ... \_\_\_\_ rain.
- 13 Opposite of wet.

#### Down

- 1 We had a \_\_\_\_\_ of rain.
- 3 Heavy rain with black clouds and wind.
- 4 Adjective from wind.
- 6 Rain for a short time.
- 7 The noise you hear in storms.
- 10 The sun \_\_\_\_\_ more in summer.
- 11 Adjective from fog.

I've got a cold.

### Unit 22

#### Find the illness words in the square. Write them in 1-9.

Т	М	X	Ε	Α	R	Z	Н	0	S
В	Α	C	K	A	(C)	Н	E	J	0
Q	S	0	1	D	0	Υ	Α	M	R
R	1	F	L	U	L	Υ	D	Z	E
U	C	J	Α	Н	(D)	E	A	K	Т
1	K	W	E	S	В	l	C		
Т	0	0	T	Н	Α	C	Н	E	R
Α	S	V	E	C	E	G		L	0
F		U					E		Α
R	S	K	Ε	٧	W	E	L	L	T

	ive got a
1	I've got a
2	I've got a
3	I've got
4	I've got
5	I've got
6	I feel

- 7 I don't feel
- 8 My arm \_\_\_\_
- 9 I've got a pain in my \_\_\_\_\_

### Unit 23

### Complete the conversation between the Chemist (Ch) and customer (C).

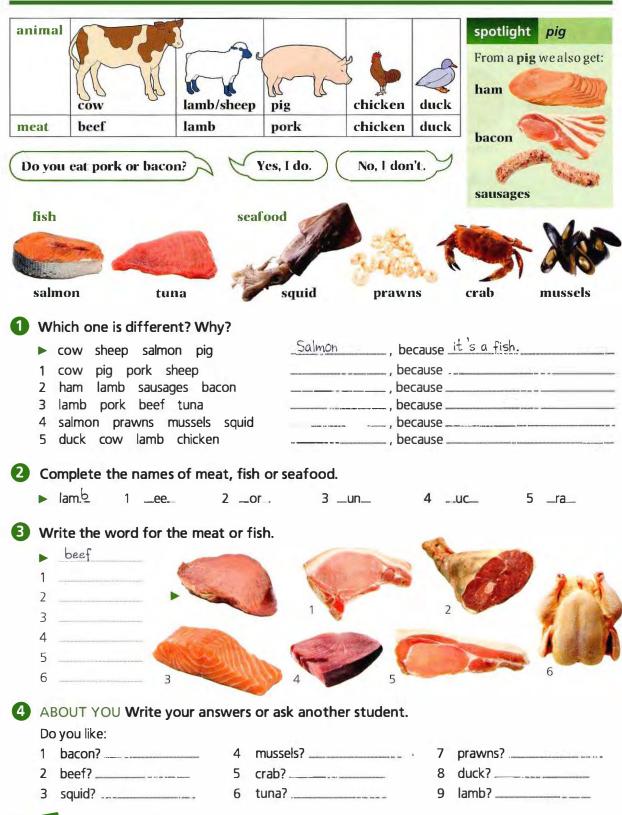
Ch	Good morning,	can I ▶	he	lp	_ you
----	---------------	---------	----	----	-------

- C I need (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ for a sore throat.
- Ch Right. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ they're excellent.
- C OK, how (4) \_\_\_\_\_ do I (5) \_\_\_\_ them?
- Ch (6) \_\_\_\_\_ one now, and then every two hours.
- C OK, and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ I have a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of tissues, and some cough (9) \_\_\_\_\_, please?
- Ch Yes, of course.



# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### 24 I can name meat and fish 6.

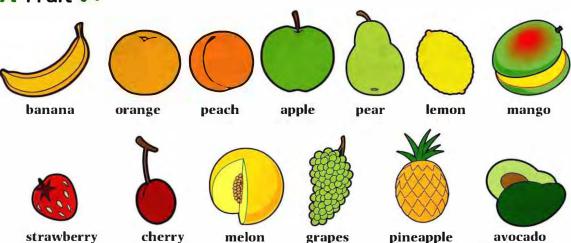


Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.



# 25 I can name fruit and vegetables

### A Fruit 6



Word	Example	Meaning	
taste	This juice <b>tastes</b> of orange and lemon.	= it's like orange and lemon when you drink it	
sweet	Strawberries are very sweet.	tasting of sugar	
bitter	Lemons are very bitter.	ore sweet	
fresh	I eat a lot of <b>fresh</b> fruit.	not old and not from a tin	

Find the end of each word.

banana | grapesmelonlemonavocadostrawberrycherrypineapplepearorangepeachapple

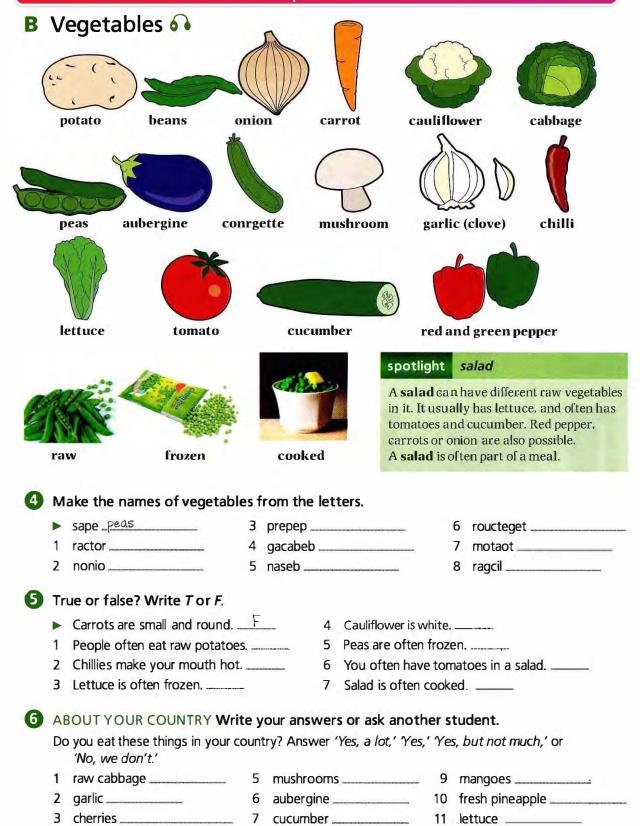
- 2 Answer the questions.
  - ► Are strawberries red or green? <u>red</u> 5 Are grapes big or small? \_
  - 1 Are peaches sweet or bitter?
  - 2 Are lemons sweet or bitter?
  - 3 Are cherries red or green?
  - 4 Are avocados red or green?
- 6 Is fresh fruit good or bad? \_\_
- 7 Do mangoes taste sweet or bitter? \_
- 8 Are melons big or small?
- Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

Use the cover card to test yourself.

Write down new words in a notebook.



#### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

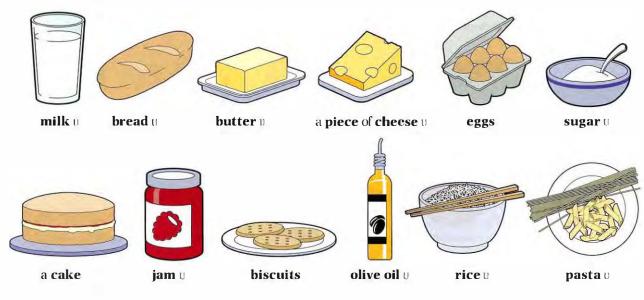
4 frozen carrots

8 avocado \_\_\_\_\_

12 courgette

# 26 I can buy food in a shop

### A Food 6







noodles



a bar of chocolate U

### spotlight

### **Uncountable nouns**

The nouns with a U are usually uncountable: butter or some butter NOT a butter/butters This bread is nice, NOT These beards are piec. We can make uncountable nouns countable: a piece of cheese a bar of chocolate

- $\bigcirc$  Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong.
  - ▶ some oil ✓ ► a milk × milk/some milk
  - 1 biscuits
  - 2 a piece of cheese \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 a butter \_\_\_\_\_ 4 cakes \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 a cheese \_\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 some sugar \_\_\_\_\_
- eggs \_\_\_\_\_ 8 a bread
- 9 pasta \_\_\_\_\_
- rices \_\_\_\_\_
- olives \_\_\_\_\_

- Complete the words.
  - ▶ bread
  - 1 mi\_\_
  - 2 some ch\_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 sug \_\_\_

- 4 bis \_ \_ \_ \_
- 5 some olive \_\_\_\_
- 6 six e \_\_\_\_
- 7 but \_\_\_\_

- 8 ri \_\_
- 9 a large bar of ch \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 noo \_\_\_\_\_
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.



### **B** Containers and quantities ••





a carton of juice

a packet of rice and a packet of biscuits

a jar of jam and a jar of olives









a tin of tomatoes

a can of soda

a bottle of wine

a box of chocolates and a box of matches









1 kg



11 a litre

half a litre 500 ml 11

We usually say tin when

tin and can

there is food inside, and we say can when there is something to drink inside. A tin of tuna.

A can of beer.

spotlight

# 100g

Study the pictures for 30 seconds. Cover the pictures. True or false? Write T or F.

- ► There's a iar of iam.
- 1 There's a box of chocolates.
- 2 There's a bottle of water.
- 3 There's a packet of sugar. \_\_\_
- 4 There's a can of cola.
- 5 There's a jar of coffee.

- 6 There's a box of matches.
- 7 There's a carton of milk.
- 8 There's a jar of olives.
- 9 There's a tin of peas. ....
- 10 There's a packet of rice.

### Complete the phrases with a suitable word.

- ► Can you buy a <u>packet</u> of rice at the shops, please?
- 1 I bought my sister a lovely \_\_\_\_\_ of chocolates.
- 2 Can I have a \_\_\_\_\_ of strawberry jam, please?
- 3 We need a ...\_\_\_ of olive oil.
- 4 There's a \_\_\_\_\_ of orange juice in the fridge.
- 5 For four people, we'll need a \_\_\_\_\_ of chicken.
- 6 Can I open this .... of chocolate biscuits?
- 7 I'd like 200 \_\_\_\_ of ham, please.
- 8 I think there's a \_\_\_\_ of noodles in the cupboard.
- 9 He drinks half a \_\_\_\_\_ of milk for breakfast.
- 10 I went out and bought a \_\_\_\_\_ of wine.





Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

# C Buying food 60



Shop assistant (SA)

Customer (C)

- Could I have a kilo of onions, please?
- SA Right.
- And have you got any peaches?
- SA Yes. How many would you like?
- I'd like four, please. Are they ripe?
- SA Yes, they're lovely. Anything else?
- No, that's all, thanks.

A Yes?

	NAA		
To the		10 CO (F)	9
1	550		
il.			
#		THE REAL PROPERTY.	Z.

- C I'd like some cheese, please.
- SA Sure. What would you like?
- Oh, that Brie looks nice.
- SA Yes, it is. How much would you like?
  - About 200 grams.
- SA Right. This piece is just over.
- C That's fine.
- SA OK. Anything else?
- No, that's it, thanks.

### Complete the dialogues.

	В	I'd like	_ six pears, please.
1		Have you	
	В	Yes. How	would you like?
2	Α	I'd like some ham, plea	ase.
	В	How	?
	Α	Oh, about 200 grams.	
	В	Of course. Anything	?
	Α	No,	it, thanks.
3	Α		have half a kilo of onions?
	В	Sure. That's	under half.
	Α	Yeah, that's fine.	
4	Α	l'd	a melon, but

B No, they need two or three more days.

### Glossary

Could I have ...? This is another polite way to say 'I want'.

Have you got any ...? = Do you have any...? ripe If something is ripe, you can eat it now. that's it or that's all = I don't want any more things.

I'd like = I would like (This is a polite way to say 'I want'.)

just over a little more than opp just under Anything else? = Do you want any more things?

#### spotlight how much and how many

We use how much with uncountable nouns and how many with countable nouns:

How much butter do you want? How many apples do we need?

### 8 Make sentences from the words.

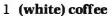
these don't look ...

A OK.

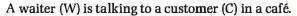
	it/that's/thanks_ hat s it, thanks.
1	twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I / ?
2	please / some / like / I'd / sugar
3	got/ham/you/any/have/?
4	much / would / cheese / how / like / you / ?
5	that's / kilo / just / half / a / over
6	oranges / many / like / would / how / you / ?



#### I can order in a café 🕟 Do Unit 26 first



- 2 black coffee
- 3 cappuccino
- 4 espresso
- 5 tea (with milk)
- 6 hot chocolate
- 7 orange juice
- 8 baguette
- 9 sandwich (white bread)
- 10 sandwich (brown bread)
- 11 toasted sandwich
- 12 roll



- Yes, please?
- I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread, please, and two chicken baguettes.
- W Is that to eat here or take away?
- C To eat here.
- W OK. Anything else?
- Yes, two coffees, please, and a cappuccino. C
- OK. The food will be a couple of minutes. Have a seat.

### Glossary

I'd like = I would like. (a polite way to say 'I want') take away eat in another place (not in the café) two coffees two cups of coffee (also two teas, etc.) a couple of minutes two or three minutes have a seat sit.down

spotlight Yes, please? and Yes, please.

Yes, please? = 'What would you like?' Yes, please is a polite way to say 'yes'.

### Find the end of each word.

- 1 You can have a rollbaguettesandwichtoastedsandwich.
- 2 You can have a cappuccinoteaorangejuiceespressoblackcoffee.

### Complete the phrases.

▶ a ham sandwich 4 black \_\_\_\_\_ 8 black or \_\_\_\_\_coffee? 1 brown \_\_\_\_\_ 5 eat here or \_\_\_\_\_ a seat, please. 6 a \_\_\_\_\_\_ of minutes 2 a toasted \_\_\_\_\_\_ 3 hot \_\_\_\_\_ 7 brown or \_\_\_\_\_ bread?

### Add one word to each line of the conversation.

Yes, please? W Please? C I like two coffees please. W To drink here or away? C To drink here. And a toasted ham. 3

W OK. It will be a couple minutes. Have seat, please.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.



#### I can order in a restaurant 28

Do Units 25, 26, and 27 first

11 knife

12 spoon

### A The table ••



- 1 glass of red wine
- 2 salt and (black)
- 3 bottle of mineral water

pepper

- 4 oil
- 5 vinegar
- 6 glass of white wine
- 7 napkin
- 8 bowl
- 9 plate
- 10 fork
- Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a k<sup>n</sup>,  $\frac{1}{2}$  fe, (1) f \_ \_ k, and (2) s \_ \_ \_ n, and a (3) n \_ \_ \_ \_ n for their hands and face. They each have a white (4) p = 1 e and a (5) b = 1. To drink, there's a (6) b \_ \_ \_ e of (7) m \_ \_ \_ l w \_ \_ r , and two (8) g \_ \_ \_ s of (9) w \_ e: one (10) r \_ d and the other (11) w \_ \_ \_ e. There is also some (12) s \_ \_ \_ t and (13) b \_ \_ \_ \_ k p \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ r, and little (14) b \_ \_ \_ \_ s of (15) o \_ l and (16) v \_ \_ \_ r.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Think about 1 – 12 in the picture and complete the sentences. On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have \_\_\_\_\_\_

We don't usually have ...

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

### B What shall we have?



boiled rice



fried eggs

rare



grilled fish



roast chicken



medium

Steak can be:

# Sara.English.School

### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### MENU

#### **Starters**

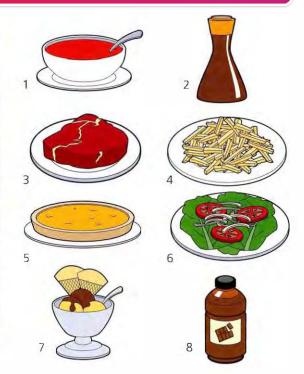
Tomato soup<sup>1</sup> Grilled prawns in soy sauce 2 Mussels in white wine and garlic

#### Main courses

Pan fried tuna with green beans Fillet steak<sup>3</sup> with chips<sup>4</sup> and mushrooms Roast duck with cabbage and peas Grilled chicken with boiled potatoes Cheese tarts with mixed salads

#### Desserts

Apple tart Ice cream7 with chocolate sauce8



	4	True	or	false?	Write	T	or	F.
--	---	------	----	--------	-------	---	----	----

- You eat the starter after the main course. F 1 You eat ice cream with a knife and fork. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You eat the main course before dessert. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Mixed salad can have lettuce and tomato in. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You eat soup and chips in the same bowl. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The list of food to eat is called a menu.
- 6 Dessert is the first thing you eat. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 You can roast a chicken or a duck. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 You can boil rice or potatoes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Fillet steak comes from a pig. \_\_\_\_\_

10	You	can	have	cheese	tart or	apple	tart.	
, -								

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.

5	Compl	ete the	sentences	
	•			

- I'd like roast chicken
- 1 I love ice c\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Could I have fillet s\_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 My starter was tomato s\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What's your main c ?
- 6 Pass me the soy s\_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Do you like your steak well d\_\_\_\_\_?
- 8 | had chicken with b\_\_\_\_\_ rice.

Which starter would you like? Which main course would you like?

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

Which dessert would you like?



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### C Customer and waiter 6

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C).

- W Are you ready to order?
- C Yes, I'll have the fillet steak.
- W And how would you like your steak?
- C Rare, please. And I'dlike a glass of red wine, and some mineral water.
- W Still or sparkling?
- C Sparkling.
- W Fine.

#### Later in the **meal** ...

- C Could I have another glass of wine?
- W Yes, of course.
- C Oh, and **some more** water, please.
- W Certainly.
- W Would you like to see the dessert menu?
- C No thanks, but I'll have a coffee. And could I have the bill, please?
- W Yes, sure.

### 8 Circle the correct word.

- ► I like (I'd like)a coffee.
- 1 Could I have some more/another potatoes?
- 2 Are you ready order/to order?
- 3 Do you want another/some more bottle?
- 4 We had a delicious meal/food last night.
- 5 Yes, course/of course.
- 6 Could I have a/the bill, please?
- 7 I/I'll have the prawns, please.
- 8 Yes, certainly/certain.

### Omplete the conversations.

#### Conversation 1

W Are you ▶ <u>ready</u> to order?

C Yes, I'll (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the steak.

W And (2) \_\_\_\_\_ would you like it?

C Rare, please. And a bottle of mineral water.

W Yes, of (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ . Still or (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

C Still, please.

#### Conversation 2

C Could I have (5) \_\_\_\_\_ more water, please?

W Certainly. And would you like a (6) \_\_\_\_\_?

C Yes, I (7) have the ice cream. Then could I have the (8) \_\_\_\_\_?

W Yes, (9)



#### Glossary

Are you ready to order? = Do you know what you wantto eat?

I'll have steak = I'd like steak. OR I want steak. How would you like your steak? = Would you

like your steak rare, medium or well done? still water water without gas

sparkling water water with gas

meal Breakfast, lunch and dinner are meals.

of course/sure/certainly These phrases all mean 'Yes, no problem.'

the bill a piece of paper which shows the money you must pay for the meal

### spotlight

#### another or some more

Say **another** (= one more) with countable nouns, e.g. **another** glass/biscuit/apple.

Say **some more** with uncountable nouns,

e.g. some more water/wine/bread.





# Review: Food and drink

### Unit 24

Put the words in the correct column. Some words go in two columns.

chicken 🗸	sq	uid crab	beef	duck	pig	tuna	mussels	pork	
sheep	lamb	salmon	cow	prawns	ham				

Animal	Meat	Fish	Seafood	
chicken	chicken			

### Unit 25

1 Write three examples of a fruit or vegetable for each colour.

red pepper	yellow	orange	white/cream	green
questa saus etimomenos como constant	ALCONOMICS CONTRACTOR AND ADDRESS OF THE ADDRESS OF			

2 Find four more adjectives, five fruits, and five vegetables in the word square.

Т	Α	Ε	L	F	R	Ε	S	H
M	U	S	Н	R	0	0	М	C
Α	В	1	P	0	Т	Α	T	0
N	Ε	R	1	P	Ε	M	В	0
G	R	Α	Р	E	S	Ε	Ε	Κ
0	G	W	U	Ν	Α	L	Α	Е
Т	1	R	L	Ε	M	0	Ν	D
0	Ν	1	0	Ν	Α	Ν	S	Е
Р	Ε	Α	R	S	W	E	E	T

# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### Unit 26

1 Put these foods and drinks into the correct column below. Some words can go into more than one column.

	orange juice wine rice				asta jam eggs tuna
Packet	Carton	Вох	Bottle	Jar	Tin
sugar					

2 Complete six more phrases or sentences you say or hear in a shop. Use words from the circle. You can use the same word more than once.

	Yes, we have.
1	Could
2	l'd
3	Have
4	Anything
5	That's

	like	
any	ha	ve
l got	it	please
some	you	much
sugar	else	we
thanks	W	ould

### Unit 27

6 How \_\_\_\_

Write the words in the correct order in the dialogue between a waiter (W) and a customer (C).

	W	please / yes /? Yes, Please!
1	C	sandwich / ham / please / toasted / like / a / l'd
2	W	that / eat / is / here / to / away / take / or / ?
3	C	away / please / and / baguette / a / cheese / take
4	W	else / fine / anything / ?
5	C	coffee / black / yes / two / a / with / lemon / and / teas
6	W	be / OK / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple
7	W	seat / a / have

### Sara.English.School

### Unit 28

1 Complete the sent	itences
---------------------	---------

Three meals in the day: breakfast, lunch and dinner..........

Three things you eat with: knife, \_\_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_\_.

Three parts in a meal: starter, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Three ways to cook food: grilled, ....., and ...., and ....

4 Three ways to cook steak: rare, \_\_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.

Two things you find on a restaurant table: salt and \_\_\_\_\_\_.

Two things you put on salad: oil and ........................

Two things people drink: red wine and \_\_\_\_\_ wine.

Two types of mineral water: still and \_\_\_\_\_\_.

### 2 A waiter (W) and a customer (C) are having a conversation. A word is missing in each line. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

► C Could I see the please? menu

1 W Are you ready to?

C Yes, I have the tomato soup.

W Right. And for your course?

C Fillet with chips.

2 W Do you want red wine or wine?

C Red, please.

W OK. Is that a or just a glass?

3 At the end of the.

C Could I have the, please?

W Yes, of. \_\_\_\_\_

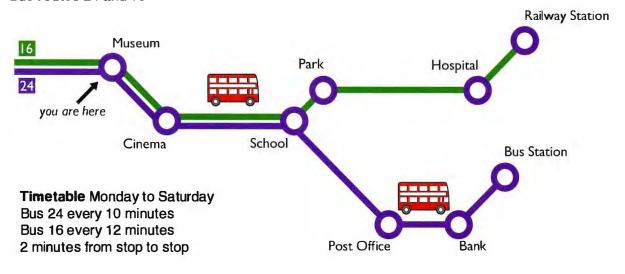
Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.

Test yourself, using the cover card.



# I can get around on buses 60

#### Bus routes 24 and 16



Questions	Answers
Excuse me, which bus do I get to the park?	The 16.
Does the 24 go to the railway station?	No, it doesn't.
Does the 24 stop near the bank?	Yes, it does.
Does the 16 stop <b>outside</b> the park?	Yes, it does.
How often does the 16 run?	Every 12 minutes.
How many <b>stops</b> is it to the park?	Three.
Which is the <b>last stop</b> for the 24?	The bus station.
Where do I get off for the cinema?	At the next stop.
How long does it take to the bus station?	It takes about ten minutes.

#### Glossary

excuse me We say excuse me when we start talking to someone we don't know.

get a bus, train, etc. travel on a bus, train, etc. (also take) go travel

near



outside



run travel on a route (bus, train) every (12 minutes) e.g. at 1.00, 1.12, 1.24, etc. (bus) stop the place where you get on or off a bus last stop the bus stop at the end of the route get off leave the bus OPP get on next stop the first stop after now

#### How long does it take? spotlight

How long? = How much time? How long does it take (to get) to the station?

- ~ It takes about 10 minutes.
- ~ It doesn't take long. = It takes a short time.



	<u>U</u>	J Sara.Englis	n.School	www.saraengiisns	chool.com
0	Write	the words in the	correct order to	make questions.	
1	▶ ne	ar / bank / stop / doe	es / the 24 / the / ?	Does the 24 stop near t	he bank?
	1 sto	ps / many / to / how	/ it / railway statio	n / is / the / ?	Topics of Pipes and the Section of t
	2 sch	ool / me / bus / whic	h / excuse / get / I	/ to / do / the / ?	and the second s
	3 tak	e / long / how / does	/ to / railway stat	ion / it / the / ?	· • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	4 pos	st office / the 24 / do	es / outside / stop	/ the /?	
!	5 off	/do/get/I/where	/ cinema / for / th	e/?	
	6 par	k / the 24 / does / to	/ go / the / ?	en senten en se ser ser ser sent se en en se	Accession and the second secon
-	7 oft	en / run / does / the :	24 / how / ?		the property of the form of the state of the
	8 wh	ich / stop / last / is / f	or / the 16 / the /	P	
		er the questions in re at the museum.		ng the bus information on	page 78. Remember,
	Ye	es, it does	west and the state of the state	5	stop.
				6	1
	_		•	7	
		د سر و لداور و الرحمة الماسان المناسبة المناسبة المناسبة المناسبة المناسبة المناسبة المناسبة المناسبة المناسبة		8	
			-	information on page 78.	
	There a	are two bus - route	: the 2	4 and the 16. For the 24, the f	irst
(	(1)	is the r	nuseum, and the	(2) stop is the	e cinema; the
(	(3)	stop is	the bus station, w	where everybody has to (4)	*Stimbony returned mines investiga
-	all their the arter are the	the bus. T	he 16 starts at the	e museum too, but it (5)	to the
r	ailway	station. The (6)	tells	you how often the buses (7)	. The 24
I	bus (8)	(9		ten minutes. It (10)	two minutes to get
1	from th	ne school to the park	<b>.</b> .		
4	ABOL	JT YOU Write you	r answers or ask	another student.	
	1 Is t	here a bus stop near	your house? If ye	s, where is it exactly?	4-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-
	2 W	nich buses stop there	?		
	<b>3</b> Ho	w often do they run	?		-iptransfer
	4 Do	you often get the b	us? If yes, where t	0?	
	5 Ho	w many stops is it?		ni e tomore con antinentamento de comunicación de mantinentamento de la comunicación de la comunicación de la c	ngan and and an analysis and an angle of the same of t
	6 Ho	w long does it take?	ما المار المساور من بازد المهالات الله بالمار إلى المساورة المساورة المساورة المساورة	er en	onkertmiller som et ja tille om væder gli de omnigstjerige (film

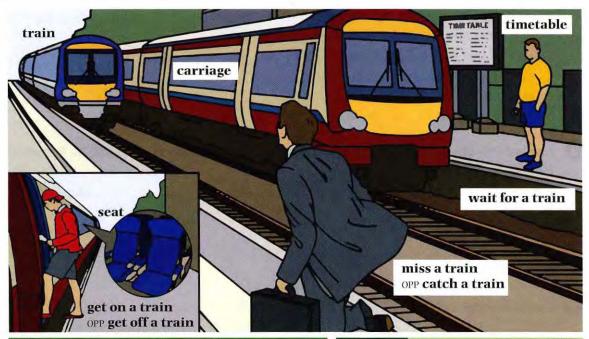
Test yourself. Cover the answers on page 78 and look at the questions and the bus route. Can you answer the questions?

Practise the questions using the CD-ROM.



# 30 I can get around on trains Do Unit 29 first

# A Train vocabulary 60



#### Glossary

get/take a train travel by train the 12 o'clock train the train that leaves at 12.00 journey when you travel from A to B fare money you pay to travel a fast train opp a slow train (railway) station a place where trains stop and people get on and off

#### spotlight

last

Last has different meanings:

- 1 final The last train leaves at 11.30 p.m. = There are no trains after 11.30 p.m.
- 2 most recent My last train journey was two weeks ago.

### Answer the guestions.

	What's another verb for get a train? take a train
1	What's the opposite of a fast train?
2	What's the opposite of get on the train?
3	What's the opposite of miss a train?
4	What's another way of saying the train that leaves at 7?
5	What do you sit on in a train?
6	Where do you gatch a train?

### 2 Complete the sentences.

	We can get the 7.45 train
1	How much was the train?
2	Our seats are in the second
3	Sorry I'm late. I the train to Zug
4	We can a train.

5 The train is at 12.00p.m	5	n is at 12.00p.m.	The
----------------------------	---	-------------------	-----

6	We	for the train in the café.

7	Have a look at the
	I think there's a train to London at 6.15.

	8	lt's a long	from Lisbon to Pari	s.
--	---	-------------	---------------------	----



#### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com Sara.English.School

# B Buying a ticket 60

It's now 9.30. A passenger (P) is talking to someone at the ticket office (O) at Bristol Station.

- P A single to Cardiff, please.
- 0 That's £10, please.
- P Right, and when's the next train?
- 0 There's one at 10.07.
- P Fine. Do I have to change?
- 0 No, it's direct.
- That's good. And when does it get to Cardiff?
- 0 10.56.
- P OK. And which platform is it?
- 0 Platform 6.
- P Right, thanks.

#### Glossary

passenger a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, car, etc.

ticket office the place where you buy tickets in a

single or single ticket a ticket for a journey from A to B (A return is a ticket for a journey from A to B, and from B back to A.)

next The next train is the first one after now.

change trains get off one train and get on another direct A journey is direct if you don't need to change

get to arrive at or in opp leave

platform the part of the station where you get on and off the train

### spotlight book something in advance

If you book a seat (in advance), you buy a ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. In a hotel, you can book a room (in advance), and in a restaurant you can book a table. You can also say reserve a seat or room or table.

3 Complete the guestions using words from the box.

	direct	London	office	train	is it 🗸		return	advance	seat	
•	Which pla	atform is it		?		4	When o	lo we get to .		?
.1	Can I boo	ok in		?		5	Where's	s the ticket		?
2	Do you w	ant a single	or		?	6	When's	the next		?
3	Is the trai	n		?		7	Can I re	serve a		7

4 Look at the timetable and complete the text.

Platform	Cheltenham	Kemble	London Paddington	
2	8.35	≥ 9.08 9.18	⊠ 10.40	
I'm going fron	n Cheltenham to Lond	on tomorrow. The	ere isn't a D direct	train, so I have
to (1)	at Kemble	e. The train (2)	Cheltenha	am at 8.35 from
(3)	2, and it (4)		to Kemble at 9.08. Ther	I have to catch the
9.18, which ge	ets (5)	London Pade	dington at 10.40. A (6)	annin making
ticket costs £2	2, but I can get a retu	rn for £40 if I boo	ok in (7)	
A8OUT YOU	Write your answe	rs or ask anoth	er student.	
1 \M/hon w/as	vour last train journe	v2		

6	A80UT	YOU	Write your	answers or	ask	another	student.
---	-------	-----	------------	------------	-----	---------	----------

1	When was your last train journey?
2	Where did you go, and why?
3	What was the fare?

- 4 Did you book in advance? \_\_\_
- 5 Was it direct, or did you have to change trains? ....



# I can ask for and give directions 👀

Excuse me. How do I get to the river from here?

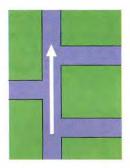
Excuse me. Do you know the way to the railway station?

Excuse me. Is there a hotel near here?

### spotlight

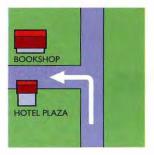
Excuse me...

It is polite to say excuse me to someone you don't know when you ask them a question.

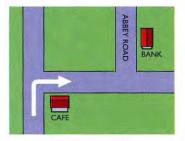


Go straight on. OR Just keep going.

It's about ten minutes.

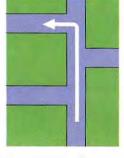


Go along here and turn left. The bookshop is **opposite** the Hotel Plaza.

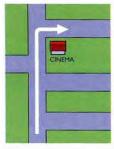


Turn right at the café, then left into Abbey Road, and the bank is on your right.





Go along here and take the second turning on the left.



It's the third turning on the right. There's a cinema on the corner.

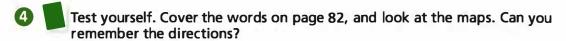


Thanks very much.



		0	Sara.English.School	www.SaraEnglishSchool.com
0	Ma	ake	sentences from the words.	
		turi	n / and / go / right / here / along	o along here and turn right.
	1			now/to/?
	2			
	3			/ here / ?
	4			-d
	5			o / bank / the / you / ?
	6		t / Road / into / Foster / turn	
2	Co	omp	lete the phrases.	
			n left or right.	5 Keep
	1	Tak	te the second	6 Go straight
	2	Tha	anks very	
	3	On	the	8 Do you know the
	4	Exc	cuse	
3	1	В	Excuse Me . How the cinema from here?  OK. Go (2)	and it's the second no, the se (4)
	2	Α	(1) me. Is there?	e a post office
		В	Yes. Go (3) he	re and (4)
			the second (5)	on the (6)
			The post office is (7)	the bank.
			(8)very much.	
		В	That's OK. No problem.	
	3	Α	Excuse me. Do you know the (1) Bonham Hotel?	to the
		_		

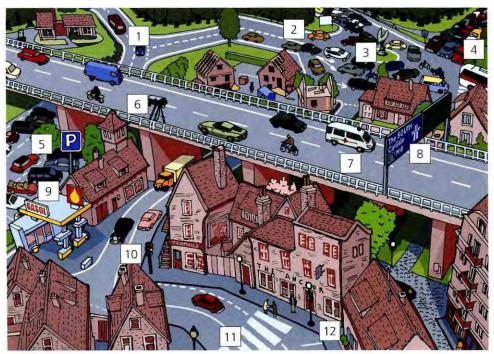
- - B No, I'm sorry, I don't.
  - A OK. Thanks... Excuse me. Do you know the Bonham Hotel?
  - C Yes. (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ left (3) \_\_\_\_\_ Frith Street and the hotel is on the next (4) \_\_\_\_\_ on your
  - A Thanks very much.
  - B Not at all.





# 32 I can talk about roads and traffic

### A In town 6



- 1 junction 2 traffic u
- 4 traffic jam
- 5 car park
- 3 roundabont
- 7 main road 8 road sign
- 6 speed camera 9 petrol station
- 10 traffic light(s)
- 11 pedestrian crossing
- 12 pavement

### Circle the correct answer.

- ► traffic park light 3 speed light/camera 6 car road/park 1 petrol station/jam

  - 4 road camera/sign
- 5 pedestrian crossing/park 2 main sign/road
- 7 traffic jam/crossing

### Complete the sentences.

- ➤ You can go the traffic light is green.
- 1 Where's the nearest petrol \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 We live on a noisy \_\_\_\_\_ road.
- 3 Can you read that road \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 The car \_\_\_\_\_ was full, so we parked on the street.
- 5 Drivers have to stop at a pedestrian . . \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Be careful! There are \_\_\_\_\_ cameras on the main road.
- 7 At the .\_\_\_\_, do we go left, right or straight on?
- 8 The \_\_\_\_\_ is always bad between 8 a.m. and 10 a.m.
- 9 Walk on the ....., not in the road!
- 10 Drive slowly and turn left at the next \_\_\_\_\_\_.

# Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.



### B Out of town 60

Beth (B) and Marco (M) are talking.

- How far is it from London to Bath?
- It's about 115 miles. That's 185 kilometres.
- M And what's the best way to get there?
- Right. Take the M4 motorway from London. At junction 18, take the A46. It's ten miles from there.
- Thanks. And what's the speed limit on M motorways here?
- В 70 miles an hour. That's about 110 kilometres an hour.
- OK. And are they very busy? M
- Yes, and you get traffic jams in the rush hour - especially when there's an accident.
- But you still use the motorway? M
- Yes, because there are three lanes on most motorways in Britain, so it's easy to overtake. Oh, and Marco - remember to drive on the left!

### Glossary

How far is it? = How many kilometres or miles is it? take the M4 goon to and travel on the M4 motorway a large, fast road between towns speed limit the fastest speed you are permitted to go busy A busy road has a lot of cars on it, opp quiet rush hour the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work accident

lane

overtake pass another car by going faster drive go somewhere in your car

4		Cover the glossary. Write the words for the meanings.
		The part of the road where cars travel, with white lines. lane
	1	A large, fast road between two towns.
	2	The busy time when people go to work.
	3	Pass another car by driving faster.
	4	The fastest speed you are permitted to go.
	5	When something bad happens, e.g. cars crash.
	6	The opposite of a busy road.
5	Co	omplete the sentences.
	•	You can take a country road, but the <u>motorway</u> is quicker.
	1	It's a very road in the rush hour.
	2	Go into the fast other cars on the motorway.
	3	How is it from Paris to Marseille? ~ It's 740 kms.
	4	The best way to get to the airport is to the M25. Oh, remember to on the left!
6	A	BOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
	1	How many lanes do motorways have?
	2	What's the speed limit on motorways?
	3	Do you have speed cameras on roads?
	4	Do you drive on the left in your country?
	5	When's the rush hour?



# 33 I can understand signs and notices 60

Sign or notice	Where?	Meaning		
ladies gents toilet	in a bar, restaurant, train, plane, etc.	₩C WC		
entrance orwayin	in a car park, museum, cinema, etc.	Go in here.		
exit or way out		Go out or leave here.		
no entry		You can't go in here.		
no exit		You can't go out here.		
no smoking	in a cinema, restaurant, etc.	You can't smoke here.		
no parking	in the street, or in front of a garage or entrance	You can't leave your car here.		
please do not disturb	hotel room door	I'm sleeping, so don't come in.		
queue here	at a cash desk in a shop, or in a bank or post office  at a cash desk in a shop, or in a bank or post office			
nothing to declare	at an airport	you have no tax to pay		
sale	in a shop window	period when a shop sells things at a lower price than normal		
out of order	on a public telephone, drinks machine, etc.	This isn't working. OR It's broken.		
please ring for attention	at reception in a hotel, office, etc.	Ringthe bell and somebody will come.		
no vacancies	in the window of a small hotel	The hotel is full.		

<b>1</b> M	atch 1	-9	with	a -	· j.
------------	--------	----	------	-----	------

No smoking	<u>d</u>
140 SHIOKING	-

- No parking \_\_\_\_\_\_. 2 Toilet \_\_\_\_
- 3 Queue here \_\_\_\_
- 4 Out of order \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Please do not disturb \_
- 6 Sale \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Entrance \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 No vacancies .....
- 9 Please ring for attention \_\_\_\_

- a in a hotel reception
- b on a hotel room door
- c on a drinks machine
- d in a café √
- e in a shop window
- f in front of a garage
- g in a hotel window
- h at the back of a restaurant
- at the front door of a museum
- j inside a post office

### Complete the signs in different ways.

- No smoking
- Please \_\_\_\_

- No \_\_\_\_
- 4 No.....
- 7 Nothing to
- Test yourself. Cover the signs and look at the meanings. Say the signs.
- 5 Way





# Review: Getting around

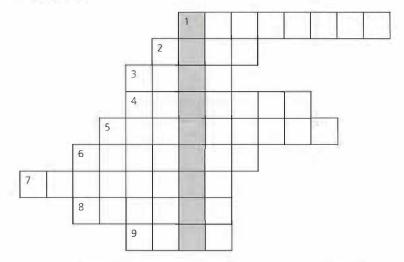
### Unit 29

#### Correct the mistakes.

<b>&gt;</b>	Where do I get out the bus for the park? Where do I get off the bus for the park?
1	This bus go to The National Museum?
2	How many stopping is it to the railway station?
3	Excuse, does this bus go to Alfred Road?
4	How long does it make to get to the centre?
5	Does the 31 stop next the post office?
6	Does the 9 stop outside from the school?
7	The which bus do I get to Queen Street?
8	Do the buses run all ten minutes?
9	How long time does it take to the centre?
10	What often do the buses run?

### Unit 30

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?



- 1 The part of the station where you get on or get off a train.
- 2 The opposite of slow.
- 3 If you get to the station late, you could \_\_\_\_\_\_your train.
- 4 Book (a seat).
- 5 This tells you when the trains arrive and leave.
- 6 When you travel from one place to another.
- 7 Part of the train where people sit.
- 8 A single or return \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Money you pay to travel.

The letters in the grey squares make the word ...



#### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

2	th	omplete the dialogue between the passenger (P) and e assistant (A) about the train journey from Bristol to anchester. It's 9.30. The passenger is in Bristol.	Bristol - Manchester (change. at Birwingham)
	P	Single to Manchester, please.	9.58 (platform 4) gets to
		That's £40, please.	Birmingham 11.26
	Р	When's the (1)?	train leaves Birmingham 11.48
	Α	9.58.	- arrives Manchester 1.23
	Р	ls it (2)?	single. £40, return £75
	Α	No, you have to (3) at Birmingham.	
	Р	OK. And when does the Manchester train (4)	?
	Α	At 11.48.	
	Р	And when does it (5)	Manchester?
	Α	1.23 p.m.	
	Р	Right, and which (6) is that?	
	Α	Four.	
1		Take the second turning the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Go straight and turn right. Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? Yes, it's the corner of this street.	
2	Cr	oss out one word in each sentence to make the sentence	es correct.
		Turn right into the Duke Street.	
	1	The bank is opposite of the hotel.	
	2	do straight on the Reep to going.	
	3	Is there a post office near from here?	
	4	It's on the your left.	
	5	Turn to left and go straight on.	
	6	It's the third turning on the right side.	



# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### Unit 32

1 Tic	k (/	)true	or	fal	se.
-------	------	-------	----	-----	-----

		TRUE	FALSE
<b></b>	You put money in a traffic light.		
1	A motorway is bigger than a main road.		N procedure and a second
2	You walk on a pedestrian crossing.	Shearanning the second	permental permental and
3	You drive your car on the pavement.	Special restriction and the second	
4	Road signs tell you what to do.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-
5	Roads are quiet in the rush hour.		\ dire the mid
6	You can get a train at a petrol station.	44 M. W. M.	PROFESSION AND REAL PROPERTY.
7	If there's a traffic jam, the roads are busy.		Maria de la compania del compania del compania de la compania del la compania de
8	Motorways have more than one lane.		
9	It's a good idea to overtake at a junction.	an all particular and a second	-
10	Cars drive round a circle at a roundahout		

### 2 Complete the radio traffic information.

We are getting reports of an ▶ accident on the M40 m (1) near
Oxford. We understand a blue Mercedes travelling over the s
(2) lost control when it was trying to o(3) a bus, and hit
two other cars. The police are now at the scene of the a(4), and say the fast
L(5) of the motorway will be closed for at least an hour. This will mean long
t j (6) during the r h (7),
and the police are telling drivers to keep away from the motorway if possible and to
t(8) a different route into Oxford.

### Unit 33

### Complete the dialogues.

<b></b>	Do we pay for things here? ~ I think so. It says <u>queue here</u> .	
1	Can I leave my car here? ~ No, the sign says	
2	Can we go in here? ~ Yes, that sign says	
3	Let's stay in this hotel. ~ We can't. Look, it says	
4	Can we clean this bedroom now? ~ No, it's says	
5	Is everything cheaper here this week? ~ Yes, look, it says	in the window.
6	Can I use that telephone? ~ No, it says it's	
7	Can we go out here? ~ No, that sign says	
8	Can I have a cigarette? ~ No. It says	



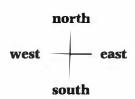
# 34 I can talk about my country 6



Brazil is enormous. The Atlantic coast¹ is more than 3,000 kilometres long, and in the north, south, and west, there are borders² with ten different countries. The longest river³ is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 metres high: it's the highest mountain⁴ in Brazil. The capital, Brasilia, is inland, but many of the major cities are on the coast. The most famous is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugar Loaf mountain. Corcovado, and some great beaches. It is very popular with tourists.

#### Glossary

enormous very big 3,000 kilometres long 3.000 kms from one end to the other 3,000 metres high 3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is high NOT tall.) capital a city where a country has its government inland not near the sea major large and important famous If something is famous, many people know about it. (Rio is famous for Carnival.) beach area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana popular If something is popular, many people like it.



- The town in the north is Recife. 6 In the north, it has
- 1 The town in the south is \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The capital is \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The longest river is the \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The highest mountain is \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 In the south, it has a border with \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 In the north, it has a border with \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 A popular city with tourists is \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 It's famous for Sugar Loaf \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Brasilia isn't near the sea; it's \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 Rio is on the \_\_\_\_\_

# Test yourself. Don't look at Exercise 1. What can you say about these places?

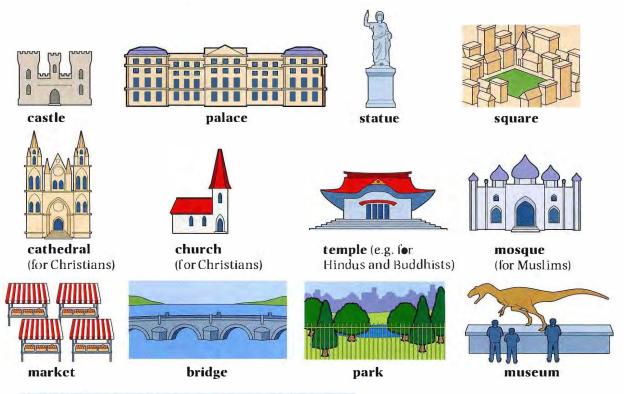
- Recife It's a town in the north of Brazil.
- The Amazon
   Pico da Neblina
- 3 Brasilia

4 Porto Alegre

- 5 Argentina6 Rio de Janeiro
- ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
  - 1 What's the capital, and where is it?
  - 2 What are some of the other major cities? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they? \_\_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Which places are popular in summer?
  - 5 What are the famous places in your capital city?

# 35 I can talk about my town Do Unit 34 first

# A Buildings and places in a town 60



building e.g. shop, church, castle NOT square, park, etc.

Correct the sp	ellina mist	akes.
----------------	-------------	-------

▶ museom . museum
4 catedral

1 brige
5 parque

2 scuare
6 musque

# 7 bilding \_\_\_\_\_

### spotlight place

We can use **place** as a general word for a town, part of a town, a hotel, etc.

Prague is **a nice place**. The Ritz is **a great place** to stay.

### 2 Complete the sentences.

3 castel .....

	My sister got married in our little <u>Church</u> .
1	I think Buddhists use that
2	The is the best place to see the river.
3	The is the cheapest place to buy food.
4	You can learn about the history of the town in the local
5	You can see children playing in the from my hotel window.
6	There is a of Nelson Mandela in the main
7	The and are both open to visitors from 10 until 5.
8	The square is a nice to sit and watch people.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.



### B Facts 6

size	It's a	big/large circle to small vi	
location	It's	West	North-east East outh-east
population	It's	over about just under } 10,000	
	_		
interesting facts	It's	famous for its cathedral modern industrial	

### Glossary

fact a piece of true information size how big or small something is city a very large town, e.g. 2 million people town smaller than a city, e.g. 30,000 people village smaller than a town, e.g. 1,000 people, and in the countryside. location the place where something is, e.g. 50 kms from Rome population the number of people who live in a place over 1 mile more than 1 mile OPP under just under a little under (also just over) modern of the present opp old industrial having a lot of industry, e.g. making cars or steel historic important in history

Write the phrases in the correct columns.

in the north-east \ on the coast famous for historic buildings over two million an industrial town just under 50,000 on the River Duero a small village south-west of the capital about 3,000 a large city a medium-sized town

Size	Location	Population	Interesting facts
	in the north-east		
		_	

Complete the text about Turir	5	Comp	lete the	text a	bout	Turin.
-------------------------------	---	------	----------	--------	------	--------

Turin is a large ▶ city , 140 km south-west (1) Milan, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the north-west (3) \_\_\_\_\_ Italy. It is (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the River Po and three other rivers. The (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_ is just (6) \_\_\_\_\_ one million (in fact, it is 908, 000). It is an (7) \_\_\_\_\_ city: the car makers, Fiat, are based here, for example, but it also has many (8)\_\_\_\_\_ buildings, including palaces and castles.

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write a similar text about your city/town/village.

# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# C Opinions 60

Word	Example	Meaning
opinion	What's your <b>opinion of</b> the new cathedral? ~ I think it's wonderful.	Your <b>opinion</b> is what you think about something; it is not a fact.
busy	It's <b>busy</b> in the summer when the towists arrive.	If a place is <b>busy</b> , it is full of people, cars, and activity. opp quiet
crowded	The bars get very <b>crowded</b> in the evenings.	full of people or too full of people
polluted dirty	It's very <b>polluted</b> because of all the industry. The buildings are very <b>dirty</b> .	a polluted place has dirty air, water. etc.
cosmopolitan	London and New York are very cosmopolitan cities.	having people from many different countries living there
there's lots to do	There's lots to do in the evening — discos, cinemas, and so on.	= there are many activities and places to visit OFF there's nothing to do
nightlife	The nightlife in my town is very good.	places to go in the evening: bars, clubs, etc.
safe	It's <b>safe</b> during the day but can be dangerous at night.	free from danger. If a town is <b>safe</b> , you don't need lots of police. or <b>dangerous</b>

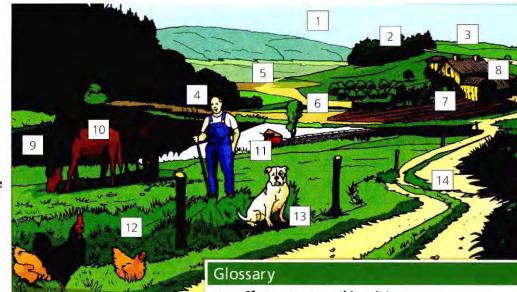
7	Do	o the speakers like the places they're	e talking about	t? Tick (✓) yes or no.	
		Υ	ES NO		YES NO
	•	'The streets are very dirty.'	<b>✓</b> 4	'There's nothing to do at night.'	
	1	'I think it's very polluted, don't you?'	5	'It's so clean on the coast.'	
	2	'There's lots to do during the day.'	6	'I always feel safe at night.'	
	3	'I think the nightlife is great.'	7	'It's a really dangerous city.'	
8	Co	omplete the dialogue.			
	Α	What's your ▶ opinion of W	Valton?		
	В	Well, there are people from all over the		v (1) –   love	that.
	Α	Yes, but is it safe?			
	В	Well, every city is a bit (2)	at night, l	out there's a lot to (3)	
		here, and the (4) is			
	Α	And is it very busy in the centre?	va. y good 1015	or barb and clabs.	
	В	It's OK on weekdays, but it gets very (5)		at the weekends, with all the	tourists.
		The centre is also quite dirty; the river is (			
9	ΑE	BOUT YOUR T <mark>OWN Write your opin</mark> i	ions, or ask an	other student.	
	1	Is your city/town/village a safe place to I	live, or is it dange	erous?	manage day
	2				
	3	Is it usually busy or quiet?			
	4				
	5	Is it a very cosmopolitan place?			
	6				
	U	13 If a Life blace to live:			The second second



# 36 I can describe the countryside

### A On the farm 6

- sky 2 wood
- 3 hill
- farmer
- 5 valley
- tree
- 7 field
- farm (the house and fields)
- 9 lake
- 10 horse
- 11 boat
- 12 grass
- 13 dog
- 14 path



Jack Robson is a farmer. He owns Eatwell Farm. He grows fruit and a few other crops.

own If you own something, it is yours. grow Farmers grow potatoes, rice, etc. to sell. a few some; not a lot crop a plant a farmer grows and sells, e.g. rice, apples

O	Look at the picture a	nd the text.	True or	r false? Write	T or F.
---	-----------------------	--------------	---------	----------------	---------

- 1 There is nothing in the field. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The farmer's in the boat.
- 3 The path goes to the lake. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The wood is on the hill. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The dog lives on the farm. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The horse is eating the grass. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The sky's grey. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 There are a lot of chickens. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 The farmer grows fruit. \_\_\_\_\_.

### Complete the words. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)

### **ABOUT YOU**

Do you	live	near	a	W	<u>U</u>	<u>U</u>	d?	

- 1 Do you live in a v \_ II \_ y or on a h \_ II?
- 2 Can you see any gra \_ \_ where you are now?
- 3 Can you see a f w tr \_ s where you are now?
- 4 Are there any f \_ \_ \_ ds near your home?
- 5 Do you \_ wn a d \_ g or a h \_ rs \_ ?
- 6 What cr \_ ps do people gr \_ w where you live?
- 7 Do you know any f \_ r \_ e \_ s?

Yes, I do. It's 200 metres from my home.

### ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Can you remember the words?



#### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# **B** In the countryside 60

I live alone in a beautiful area in the countryside. In the mornings, it is so quiet, I sit and listen to the birds - it's wonderful. I've got a garden with lots of flowers and I grow all my fruit and vegetables, so I only eat fresh food, which is very healthy. The big problem is that public transport is terrible, but I've got a bike if I need to go to town. And it's a bit lonely too, but I can always talk to Jack at Eatwell Farm, and sometimes I look after his chickens for him.



#### Glossary

area a part of a town, country or the world the countryside a place with fields, woods, farms, etc. that is outside towns or cities

bird

wonderful very good opp terrible

fresh food food taken from the tree or plant; not old or from a tin

healthy If something is healthy, it helps to keep you well. If a person is healthy, they are well. public transport system of buses and trains

bike (also bicycle) you ride a bike or go somewhere by bike

AROUT YOU

look after If you look after an animal, you give it food and sec that it is healthy.

is the meaning of the underlined words/phrases the same or different? Write 5 or D.

	We always use public transport/the buses and trains here.	S
1	These carrots are fresh/clean.	
2	She's looking at/looking after the dog.	F
3	I think city life is wonderful/terrible.	
4	Have you got a bike/bicycle?	
5	Are you alone/lonely at the moment?	
6	She's healthy/very well.	
7	He lives in the countryside/on a farm.	
8	He rides his bike to work/goes to work by bike.	

#### spotlight alone and lonely

Alone and lonely mean 'not with other people'. If you are lonely, you aren't happy about it. If you are alone, you can be happy or unhappy. She likes living alone. NOT She likes living lonely. She's lonely. = She would like to have more friends.

Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some sentences have two mistakes.

<b>&gt;</b>	I sometimes have to look afer children. after	I look after my children every day.
1	I often buy floweres.	The state of the s
2	I love the contryside	annum on an an an an annum annum annum an a a a a
3	I'm very helthy.	to communication to the uncommunication of a first communication of a second
4	I see lots of brids in my aerea.	4 miles and the second
5	Our public transporte is wonderfull.	
6	I'm often alon in the evening.	
7	I eat fraish fruit every day.	arm of a management of a second
8	never feel lonley.	

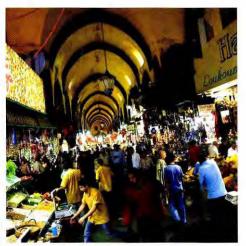
ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 6 true about you? If not, change them to make them true.



# I can talk about shops

# A Places to shop 6.

Places	What they sell
market (a number of stalls, outdoors or indoors)	food, sometimes furniture, CDs, books, flowers
shopping centre (a number of shops, usually indoors)	everything
<b>department store</b> (a large shop)	almost everything, but not usually food: beds, books, televisions, clothes, perfume
supermarket (a large shop)	food, drinks, cleaning products for the house, shampoo, things for the kitchen
hypermarket	the same as a supermarket, but also clothes, TVs, furniture. Hypermarkets are outside towns.
butcher's	meat
baker's	bread and cakes
chemist's	medicine, e.g. aspirin, also soap, shampoo
deli(catessen)	sandwiches, bread, cheese, ham, coffee
paper shop or newsagent's	newspapers, chocolates, cigarettes



An indoor market

6 music shop \_\_\_\_

#### spotlight Noun + shop

For many shops, we often use noun + shop: shoe shop, clothes shop, bookshop, music shop (for CDs and DVDs), fruit and vegetable shop.etc.

- Three answers are correct. Circle the wrong answer.
  - ▶ I got the vegetables from the... supermarket (baker's) market fruit and vegetable shop
  - 1 I got the bread from the... hypermarket deli baker's butcher's
  - 2 I got the meat from the... supermarket baker's market butcher's
  - 3 | got these jeans from a... market paper shop department store clothes shop
  - 4 I got this shampoo from the... deli chemist's supermarket department store
  - 5 I got the cheese from a... supermarket market stall deli chemist's
  - 6 I got these CDs from the... shopping centre newsagent's department store music shop
- Write two things you can buy in each of these places.
  - ▶ department store bed television 4 newsagent's \_\_\_\_\_ 1 deli ...... 5 baker's
  - 2 chemist's \_\_\_\_ 3 market \_\_\_\_\_\_
- Test yourself. Cover 'Places' and look at 'What they sell'. Can you remember the names of the shops and shopping places?



# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# **B** Shopping habits ••

Hypermarkets are so **convenient** – you can **get** everything in one place.

I do the supermarket shopping on Thursdays when it's quiet.

Supermarkets are so busy at the weekend.
I don't like queueing at the checkout!

You can **choose** from a lot of different things in a supermarket, but I **prefer** markets.

They're friendlier.

There are six of us in my family, so I fill two trolleys every week!

I get a lot of things on the internet. They always deliver to your home.

### Glossary

convenient easy and quick to use get buy

do (the) shopping buy food and things you need often, e.g. soap

queue wait in a line of people

**checkout** the place in a supermarket where you pay **choose** decide which thing you want

**prefer** like something or someone more than another

fill make something full (The trolley in the picture is full.)

trolley



basket



deliver take things to a person or a place

4	Tr	ue or false? Write T or F.
	<b>•</b>	If you have a car, supermarkets are very convenient
	1	You can't get CDs in a hypermarket
	2	You can fill a trolley or a basket
	3	You go to clothes shops to do the shopping
	4	You sometimes have to queue when you want to pay
	5	You can choose from a lot of different things in small shops.
	6	You pay at the checkout in a supermarket
	7	At a supermarket, you put the things you want to buy in a trolley or basket.
	8	All shops will deliver the things you buy to your home
5	Co	omplete the words in the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)  ABOUT YOU
	1	When do you or your family usually do the s?
	2	Do you pr supermarkets or small shops?
	3	Do you often have to q at the checkout?
	4	DO VOU INIUK SUDEITIAIKEIS ALE CO
	5	Do you think supermarkets are co?  Do supermarkets in your town dthings to your home?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 5 or ask another student.

# I can talk about my home

### A Flats 6

I live in a block of flats near the town centre, in an arca called Montpellier. I really like the flat, and my neighbour, Simon, is very friendly.

- 1 (on) the top floor
- 2 (on) the second floor
- 3 (on) the first floor
- 4 (on) the ground floor
- 5 garden
- 6 steps
- 7 (in) the basement
- 8 rubbish u
- 9 front door
- 10 stairs
- 11 lift
- 12 flat
- 13 balcony



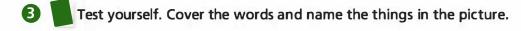
### True or false? Write T or F.

- ► Helen lives on the second floor. . . T
- John and Lucy live on the ground floor.
- 2 Miki lives on the top floor. \_\_
- 3 Anna lives on the first floor.
- 4 They put their rubbish in the lift.
- 5 Simon lives in the basement.
- 6 Ferdy's flat has got a balcony.
- 7 Rob's flat has got a garden. ......
- The steps are at the front door. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Ferdy needs to use the stairs or lift. \_\_\_\_

### Complete the words.

- ▶ | i\_ft
- b\_\_\_\_t
- 2 b\_\_\_k of f.\_\_s
- 3 g\_\_\_\_d f\_\_\_r
- 4 f\_\_\_t d\_\_r
- 5 s\_\_\_\_s

- 6 g\_\_\_\_n
- 7 s\_\_\_s
- 8 n\_\_\_\_r
- 9 b\_\_\_\_y
- 10 t\_\_nc\_\_e





# B Houses



#### **BATHFORD**

Modern family house in this quiet village with lovely views of the countryside. Large living room1, dining room2, study3, modern kitchen4 and utility room. Upstairs there are four good-sized bedrooms and a family bathroom. Outside there is a large garden, a garage, and further parking for two cars.

### 4 Find the end of each word.

(studyviewmodernlivingroomtoiletkitchenhomeparking diningroomupstairsbedroomutilityroombathroom

#### Glossary

modern of the present time oppold view what you see from the house utility room a room where you do the washing, ironing, etc.

upstairs



OPP downstairs outside not in a house or other building opp inside garage a building where you park yourcar parking u a place where you can park (leave) your car

#### spotlight flat, house and home

A flat is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.

A house is a building with rooms on two or more floors.

Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

5	Comp	lete	the	text.
	Comp	ICIC	LIIC	CCX

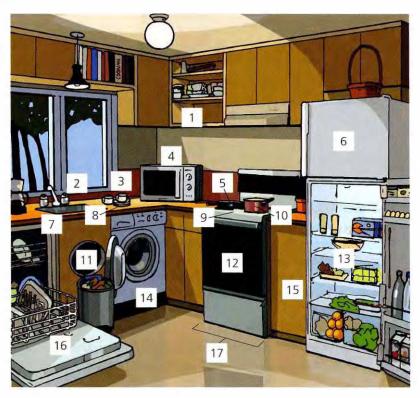
		re in a ▶ <u>modern</u> house – it's only four years old. It's got a (1) room, dining									
	room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) It's in the town centre, and from the living										
	room I've only got a (3) of the railway station, which isn't very nice. I leave my car on										
	the	e street because I don't have a (4), but it's got a small (5), so I can eat									
	(6) when it's warm.										
	My brother's got a house in a village near me, and from the house he's got fantastic										
	(7)	of the countryside. Downstairs there's a living room, dining room, large									
	(8)	and a (9) where my brother works. (10) there are four									
	(11	) and two (12), so there's lots of space when I visit with friends.									
	The	ere's also (13) for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer they eat									
	(14	) all the time.									
6	AE	BOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.									
	1	Do you live in a house or a flat?									
	2	If it's a flat, which floor are you on?									
	3	Have you got a garden? If so, how big is it?									
	4	What's the view? Is it nice?									
	5	Have you got parking?									
	6	What rooms have you got in your home?									



# I can describe a kitchen

### A In the kitchen 🚱

- shelf plural shelves
- 2 tap (turn the tap on/off)
- 3 cup(s)
- 4 microwave
- 5 frying pan
- 6 freezer
- 7 sink
- 8 saucer(s)
- 9 hob
- 10 saucepan
- (rubbish) bin The bin is full opp empty
- 12 oven
- 13 fridge
- 14 washing machine
- 15 cupboard
- 16 dishwasher
- 17 cooker



1	Complete the	sentences	usina	vocabulary	from	the pictur	e
-	COMPLETE THE	36111611663	usiliu	vocabulai v		tile bictur	C

- Put the milk in the fridge
  - 1 Put those dirty clothes in the w\_\_\_\_\_ m\_\_\_\_
  - 2 Put the dirty plates in the d.\_\_\_\_\_ or the s\_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Put the cups and s \_\_\_\_\_ in the c\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 Put the books on the s\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 Put the empty packets in the b.\_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 Put the meat in the o\_\_\_\_\_.

  - 8 Put the ice cream in the f\_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 Is the rubbish bin f ?
- 10 Heat the soup in the m\_\_\_\_ or on the h\_\_\_\_
- 11 Could you turn the t\_\_\_\_\_ off?
- 12 Boil the potatoes in that s\_\_\_\_\_.

### ABOUT YOU Write down anything in the picture you haven't got.

- ► I haven't got a microwave, and my washing machine isn't in the kitchen. I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.



# **B** Using the kitchen 6.

#### Housework

- 1 do the shopping
- 2 put the shopping away ( = in the cupboards, fridge, etc)
- 3 put the dirty clothes in the washing machine; turn it on
- 4 clean the cooker
- 5 take the washing (= the clothes) out of the washing machine
- 6 make a sandwich
- 7 empty the bin
- 8 do the ironing
- 9 cook hunch for the family
- 10 do the washing-up





















10

spotlight

do + noun

These phrases are very common in spoken English: do the shopping, do the washing-up, do the housework, do the ironing

8

Be careful!

housework = cleaning the house

**homework** = work teachers give students to do after class

### Complete the text.

Saturday is my day for doing the housework. First, I go to town and do the (1) \_\_\_\_\_. Then I come back, (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ everything (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in the cupboards, and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the bin. If the kitchen's dirty, I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ it, and then I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of tea. My sister usually helps me. She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ all the dirty clothes in the washing machine and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the washing out when it's finished. I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch, but afterwards, we do the (10) \_\_\_\_\_\_ together. When the clothes are dry, I do the (11) \_\_\_\_\_.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

In your home ...

- 1 Who does the shopping?
- 2 Who cooks the dinner?
- 3 Who does the washing-up? \_\_\_\_\_\_ 6 Who does the ironing? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Who cleans the kitchen?
- 5 Who empties the bin?

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.

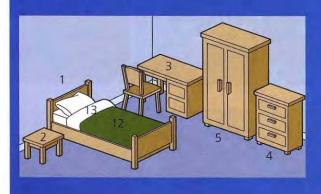


# 40 I can describe a bedroom and bathroom

### A Bedroom and bathroom 🕟

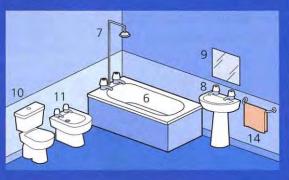
### International student house

ur rooms are all newly furnished, and include: a single bed1, bedside table2, desk3 and chair, chest of drawers4, and wardrobe5.



There are three bathrooms on each floor: each has a bath6, shower7, washbasin8, mirror9, toilet10, and bidet11.

We provide blankets<sup>12</sup>, but students must bring their own sheets13 and towels14.



One word	is	different	Which	one?
Olic Wold	13	unicicii.	AAIIICII	OIIC:

- bedside table toilet wardrobe
- bath shower mirror
- 2 wardrobe desk chest of drawers
- 3 blanket desk chest of drawers
- 4 bed chest of drawers bidet
- 5 wardrobe toilet washbasin
- 6 towel blanket sheet
- Write in the missing letter.
  - ▶ dek desk
  - 1 beside table \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 miror \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 ath \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 chest of drawes \_\_\_\_\_

- Toilet is different. The other two are in a bedroom. is different. You can wash in the other two.
- is different. You put clothes in the other two.
- is different. The other two are pieces of furniture.
- is different. The other two are in a bedroom. is different. The other two are in a bathroom.
- - is different. The other two are on a bed.
- 5 wasbasin \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 tolet
- 7 wadrobe \_\_\_\_\_
- bide \_\_\_\_\_ 8
- 9 blanke \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 seet \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 twel \_\_\_\_\_
- 12 shoer \_\_\_\_\_
- ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about your bedroom and bathroom.

In my bedroom, there's In my bathroom, there's \_\_\_\_\_

Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the pictures. Say the words for 1–14.



# Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### B In the bathroom 6.



You can also put on or wear



perfume. I

- Circle the correct word.
  - ► I wash (clean) my teeth with (toothpaste) a comb.
  - 1 I do/put on my hair with a razor/a brush.
  - 2 Do you have/do a bath every day?
  - 3 She puts on/has make-up when she goes out.
  - 4 Do you often have a shave/wash with an electric razor?
  - 5 He washes/cleans his hair with expensive perfume/shampoo.
  - 6 When you take off make-up you use tissues/a comb.

### **6** Write a, an or nothing (–).

- l don't use \_\_\_\_ make-up.
- 1 I need \_\_\_\_\_ new comb.
- 2 Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ tissue?
- 3 I never use \_\_\_\_ perfume.
- 4 I must buy \_\_\_\_\_ brush.

### spotlight have + noun

Notice these phrases with have:
I have a shower every day.
I don't have a bath very often.
Do you have a shave every morning?
I have a wash after work.

- 5 I buy \_\_\_\_\_ shampoo every week.6 Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ electric razor?
- 7 I just use ..... soap.
- 8 I need \_\_\_\_\_ new toothbrush and \_\_\_\_\_ toothpaste.

### ABOUT YOU Tick ( $\checkmark$ ) a or b. Then if possible tell another student your answers.

1	a I usually have a bath. b I usually have a shower.	5	For women: a I often wear perfume.	
2	a I clean my teeth before breakfast.  b I clean my teeth after breakfast.		b I don't wear perfume very much. a I usually wear make-up.	
3	a I wash my hair twice a week or less.  b I wash my hair more than twice a week.	6	b I don't wear make-up very much.  For men:	
4	a I usually use a brush on my hair. b I usually use a comb on my hair.		a I use an electric razor. b I don't use an electric razor.	



#### I can describe a living room 6. 41



- 2 light
- 3 ceiling
- 4 wall
- 5 curtains
- 6 TV/television
- picture
- 8 bookshelves
- 9 radiator



- 10 cushion
- 11 DVD player
- 12 lamp
- 13 armchair
- 14 coffee table
- 15 fireplace
- 16 floor
- 17 sofa
- 18 rug
- 19 carpet
- An armchair, a sofa and a coffee table are furniture u, or pieces of furniture.

1 Look a	t the picture.	True or	r false?	Write	T or	F.
----------	----------------	---------	----------	-------	------	----

In the living room, there is only one...

- ▶ TV \_\_\_\_\_
   3 cushion \_\_\_\_\_
   7 rug \_\_\_\_\_
   11 picture \_\_\_\_\_

   ▶ picture \_\_\_\_\_
   4 carpet \_\_\_\_\_
   8 radiator \_\_\_\_\_
   12 wall \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 radiator \_\_\_\_\_ 12 wall \_\_\_\_

- 1 light \_\_\_\_\_ 5 curtain \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 armchair \_\_\_\_\_ 13 DVD player \_\_\_\_

- 2 lamp \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 fireplace \_\_\_\_ 10 sofa \_\_\_\_ 14 piece of furniture \_\_\_\_
- Complete the words.
  - ▶ window 1 \_\_\_ or
- 4 \_\_\_ iator 5 \_\_\_\_fee \_\_\_\_le
- 8 \_\_\_\_ht
- 12 \_\_\_\_ place

- 2 \_\_\_ pet
- 6 \_\_\_ ling
- 9 \_\_\_ tains 10 \_**\_**\_\_ hair

- 3 \_\_\_\_ hion
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ ves 11 \_\_q
- ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers or ask another student.
  - 1 How many windows have you got in your living room?
  - 2 Have you got radiators, a fireplace or both?
  - 3 What have you got on the floor?
  - 4 What's on the walls?
  - 5 Are the lights on the ceiling or the walls? 6 What furniture have you got?
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.



### Review: Places

#### Unit 34

Comp	ete	the	sent	tence	S

- ► Moscow is in the west of Russia.
- 1 Milan is in the \_\_\_\_\_ of Italy.
- 2 Bangkok is in the \_\_\_\_\_ of Thailand.
- 3 San Francisco is on the west \_\_\_\_\_ and New York is on the east \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the USA. 9 Bondi is a long \_\_\_\_\_ in Australia.
- 4 China is an \_\_\_\_\_ (very big) country.
- 5 Geneva is near the \_\_\_\_\_\_ between Switzerland and France.

- 6 Paris is the \_\_\_\_\_ of France.
- 7 The Nile is the longest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.
  - 8 Fujiyama is the highest \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan.
- 10 Brazil is \_\_\_\_\_ for Samba, football, and Carnival.

### Unit 35

#### 1 Write the opposite.

- north south
  - 3 south-west \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 a busy street \_\_\_\_\_

- 1 an old city \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 safe \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 polluted \_\_\_\_\_ 2 under a million \_\_\_\_\_\_ 5 there's lots to do \_\_\_\_\_ 8 opinion \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Complete the texts.
  - A Granada is quite a large town about 350 km south (1) Madrid. It has a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of about 300,000 people. It's an old town with lots of (3) \_\_\_\_\_ buildings, and a famous (4) \_\_\_\_\_ called The Alhambra. It's a very popular (5) \_\_\_\_\_ with tourists.
  - B New York is a big (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_, which is (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic coast. It's (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for a number of things: the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of Liberty, Times (10) \_\_\_\_\_,

### Unit 36

### 1 Complete the crossword.

- ▶ Part of a town, country or the world. area
- 1 You see this between two hills.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ food is good for you.
- 3 You go on this on a river.
- 4 A person who grows crops to sell.
- 5 Horses eat this.
- 6 A place where you walk between fields.
- 7 A large area of water with land around it.
- 8 Not with other people. \_\_\_\_\_

		A	R	E	A	
	1	Α			Ī	
2		Α				
3		Α				
	4	Α				
5		A				
Т	6	A				
	7	A 8A				
		<sup>8</sup> A				



	Sara.English.School	WW	/W.	sar	aEr	igli	sh	ch	00	l.co	m	
2 Co	omplete the crossword.		W	0	0	D	1					
•	A place with a lot of trees. wood		1		0							
1	An animal you can ride.		-	0								
2	Farmers potatoes, rice, etc.	2		0								
3	Plants that farmers look after and then	3		0								
	sell for food.		4						1			
4	Unhappy because you are not with			0								
	other people.			50								
5	If yousomething, it		6	0								
6	is yours.  A place with fields, farms, woods, etc. outside.	de to	NVDS		rities					_		
Jn	it 37											
l Co	omplete the words.											
	A shop where you get sandwiches, coffee, b	oreac	d, etc.	is a	deli.							
1	A place with shops which is indoors is a s		The second section section	P9-MIIII-II	C							
2	A shop where you buy newspapers, chocola	ites,	etc. is	a n.		Paris a dem il passes 2000	5344- 80148 B0148 HED	EH196199				
3	A shop where you get medicine, shampoo, e	etc. i	s a c			n ( - sis - es - sins-	Massem					
4	A large shop which sells food, things for cle	aning	g, etc	. is a	h	***************************************	and the contraction	and the lot offer	or a	S		emontonia terreta a
5	A shop where you get bread and cakes is a	b		la l'amonda a una d								
6	A place where you buy books is a b	***********************										
7	A shop where you buy meat is a b	discount of the	PS 868 200									
8	A large shop where you can buy almost any	thing	g: clo	thes,	beds	s, etc	. is a	d		r hard Tallahaa Iyoo M		
	Santa and the rise annual research and the santa annual research a											
9	A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc.	is a r	m			_	S	1 1111 80 111 514 18	- ''w ser -ee - ee r			
	omplete the crossword. The letters in th	ne gr	ey so	quar	es n	nake	a di	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
W	hat is it?						1 20		1	1		1
	where you buy books bookshop			B	0	0	K	S	H	0	P	
1	wait in a line of people						1					
2	buy the things you need: do the				2							
3	easy and quick to use			3		-						
4	like something more than another thing			3								
c	a shopping place outdoors where different	naan	ام دما				4					
	you food, books, etc.	peop	11C 3C1					5				
6	5 you find these in a market					6						
	' the opposite of 'outdoors'		7									
	3 in a supermarket, you put things in a							1			1	
	trolley or a				8							
c	9 buy						9					
	) where you pay for things in a	1	T-					JI.		_la		
	big shop											
TH	ne word in the grey squares is											

SARA English Schoo

106 REVIEW: PLACES

# Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# Unit 38

1

2

1

2

He	ere are some definitions. What are the words?								
	The room where you talk and watch TV. living room								
1	The room where you wash and have a shower.								
2	The room where you cook food.								
3	The room where you sleep.								
	The room where you do work/homework.								
5	The place where you put the car.								
6	The thing that takes you from one floor to another floor.								
7	The place outside your house where there are trees and flowers.								
8	The place where you live (a flat or a house).								
	atch 1 – 8 with a – i.								
	quietd a floor								
1	front b views								
2	lovely c of flats								
3	ground d village ✓								
4	modern e centre								
5	dining f door								
6	parking g house								
7	block h for two cars								
8	town i room								
	rite your answers.								
•	You boil vegetables in this. Saucepan								
1	You wash plates and cups in this or								
2	You wash clothes in this.								
3	You put rubbish in this.								
	You cook food very quickly in this.								
	You put clean plates, cups, and saucers here.								
	You keep milk and cold drinks in this.								
	You put ice cream in this.								
	You cook meat slowly in this.								
Co	omplete the sentences.								
	Do the shopping on the way home.								
1	Come home and the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge.								
2	the dirty washing in the machine, and it on.								
3	Forty minutes later, the machine off and take the washing								
4	the washing-up and the bin.								
5	Finally,lunch.								



#### Unit 40

1 Put these words in two groups, and give a name to each group.

wardrobe shower	towel washbasin	toilet blanket sheet chest single bed desk bath bid	of drawers det
1		2	

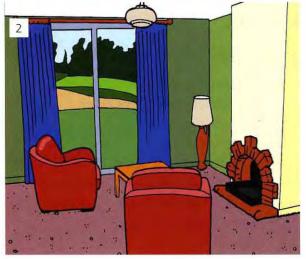
2 Complete the questions, then answer them.

$\blacktriangleright$	What do you use when you wash your hair?	shampoo
1	What do you use when you make-up?	
2	What do you use when you a shave?	101 10 10 00000000000000000000000000000
3	What do you use when you your teeth?	
4	What do you use when you your hair?	
5	What do use when you a wash?	100 FBB (107 Sp 346

#### Unit 41

Look at the two pictures. Write down ten more differences.



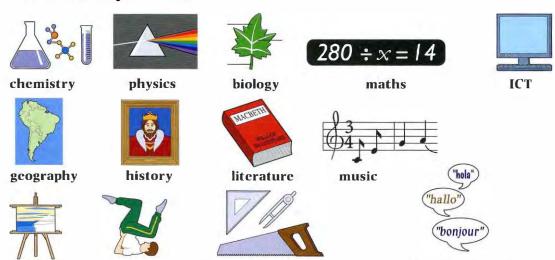


	Picture 1 has got a sofa, but picture 2 has	1 t.	_
1		6	
2	The G. SERIES AND CONTROLLED CONTROLLED CONTROL OF THE PARTY IN THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE	7	
3	art.	8	10000000000000000000000000000000000000
4	10 to 10 to 10 to management - 10 to 10 to 10 to 10	9	M. M. P. C. D. M.
5	The state of a most consequence of the state	10	



## 42 I can talk about my school

### A School subjects 6.



design and technology

Chemistry, physics, biology, etc. are school subjects.

PE

ICT = information communication technology PE = physical education

RE = religious education

spotlight

be good at something

If you are good at something, you do it well. If you are terrible at it, you do it very badly. I'm (quite) good at languages. I'm terrible at maths.

modern languages

Complete the words.

Write the name of a school subject.

5 The subject I like/liked most is/was \_\_\_\_\_

- ▶ Beethoven, jazz, music
- 1 football, gym
- 2 computers \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Spanish, German
- 5 church, mosque, etc.
- 6 CO<sub>2</sub> H<sub>2</sub>O
- 7 Picasso, Monet \_\_\_\_\_

ABOUT YOU Circle the correct verb form. Complete the sentences about yourself.

- 1 At school, I'm/I was good at 2 I'm/I was quite good at \_\_\_\_\_ 3 I'm/I was terrible at
- 4 We don't/didn't study
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the subjects.



### B The education system 6

Education in England and Wales

You can ...

star	t nursery school at 3	go to primary school at		o to <b>secondary</b> state school or	y school at 11 r private school)	
				-		
goto	university	stay at school until 18	4	leave scho	<b>ol</b> at 16	
<u> </u>		<b>+</b>		<b>\</b>	<b>1</b>	
		get a job	g	to to college	get a job	
			Glossar	ry		
				ool go to a new	school for the	
	<pre>pupils (= schoolchildre a uniform.</pre>	n up to the age of 16)	first tim		here education is	
Weal	a uniform.			private school		
6 PL	ut the story in order.			chool go to scho so continue at s	ool for a period of	
а	where he learnt to read	and write.	-	to that time ('I		
b	He stayed there until he	e was sixteen,	3.00.' n	neans 'after 3.00	), I went away.')	
С	When Tom was three,	1	college place where you can study after you leave school leave school stop going to school get a job find a job uniform special clothes that children			
d	and then he went to co	ollege.				
е	After that, he went to s					
f	He left college when he			special ciotnes a school	that children	
g	At the age of five					
h	he started nursery scho		spotligl			
i	he went to primary sch		Children go to school at 5 (or at the age of 5). = Children go to primary school			
j	and got a job in a bank			ey are five (year		
<b>6</b> co	omplete the question	s, but don't write answers.				
			ABC	OUT YOUR CO	UNTRY	
•	At what age do childre	n go to nursery school?		entra (Canada da Cara da Cara da Maria	ponte de la communicación de la com-	
1	When do they s.	primary school?				
2	Do they usually wear a	u at primary scho	ol?		to the second se	
3	· ·	start sschool?				
4	When can they	school and				
_	g a job?			The second secon		
5	Do they go to stschools, or both?	schools, pr				
		V Write your answers to the				



another student.

## C Exams 👀

When I was at secondary school, I went to all the lessons and did my homework, but I didn't work very hard. So, when I took exams at 16, my results weren't fantastic. I passed six, which was good, but I failed maths. My worst result was physics—I got a grade E, which was terrible. After that, I went to a sixth form college where I worked hard and did well. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That's where I am now.



#### Glossary

**lesson** a period of time (about an hour) in school when you are learning something

**do homework** U do work the teacher has given you to do at home (NOT homeworks)

work hard work a lot

result what you get in an exam, e.g. 80%, A, or 8/10 (the) worst superlative of bad opp (the) best superlative of good grade you get a grade (e.g. A or B) or a mark (e.g. 15/20) in an exam

do well be good at something and get better at it opp do badly

#### spotlight exam (examination)

An **exam** is an important test at the end of a period of study. **take an exam** = sit down and write your answers in the exam **pass an exam** = take an exam and do well. e.g. grade A or 85% **fail an exam** = take an exam and do badly. e.g. grade D or 35%

8 Look	at Rafael's exam	results on	the right and	answer the	questions.
--------	------------------	------------	---------------	------------	------------

	How many exams did he take?
1	Did he take an exam in chemistry?

- 2 How many did he pass?
- 3 How many did he fail? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What was his best grade? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What was his worst grade? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What did he get in English? \_\_\_\_\_

Exam	Grade	A, B, C - pass
French	В	D, E – fail
IT	C	
Geography	D	
Biology	A	
English	C	
History	В	
Maths	E	

9	Comp	lete the	questio	ns.
	Comp	ccc ciic	questio	

	Six out of ten isn't a very goo	od mark
--	---------------------------------	---------

- 1 I have to \_\_\_\_\_\_ an English exam tomorrow.
- 2 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ your homework last night?
- 3 Paula did very \_\_\_\_\_\_ in her German exam; she got a \_\_\_\_\_ A.
- 4 I got my exam \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. I passed all of them.
- 5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He's doing \_\_\_\_\_\_ at school, and last week he \_\_\_\_\_ an important maths exam.
- 6 Maths is my \_\_\_\_ subject. I'm terrible at it.

### 10 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions or ask another student.

- 1 How long are/were your lessons at school?
- 2 Do/Did you work hard at school most of the time?
- 3 At what age will/did you take important exams?
- 4 How many will/did you take? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Will/Did you pass all of them?



### 43 I can talk about university Do Unit 42 first

### A A university degree 👀

I started university two years ago, when I was nineteen, and I'm doing a degree in Spanish and French. The course lasts three years, and there are three terms a year. I work in the library a lot because – like many undergraduates – I have to write lots of essays. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed one and had to take it again. I got the result two weeks ago; fortunately I passed this time. When I've got my degree – a BA – I want to do research for a PhD.



#### Circle the correct word.

- ► She did an English course term.
- 1 I want to do/make a degree in maths.
- 2 A term/degree lasts about ten weeks.

How long does the torm 105t

3 I've got a BA/BSc in physics.

#### Glossary

do a degree study at university for three or four years course a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English course

term a period of study, usually about ten weeks library a place where you can read and borrow books undergraduate a student doing a first degree (A graduate has a degree.)

write an essay do a piece of writing on a subject again one more time

fortunately We say fortunately when we give good news, opp unfortunately

BA/BSc Bachelor of Arts/Science

MA/MSc Master of Arts/Science

do research study a subject for a long time to learn new information

PhD Doctor of Philosophy

#### spotlight How long does it last?

**To last** is to continue for a period of time. How long does the film **last**? ~ Two hours. The Masters course **lasts** two years.

- 4 I study a lot in the library/bookshop.
- 5 A graduate/An undergraduate has a degree.
- 6 Fortunately/Unfortunately, I failed the exam.
- 7 You can do research before/after a degree.

	2	Complete	the	dialo	ogues
--	---	----------	-----	-------	-------

		now long does the term ? ~ About twelve weeks.
	1	Have you got a? ~ Yes, a BSc.
	2	Did she have to an essay? ~ Yes, three, in fact.
	3	Can you research next year? ~ Yes, I want to do a
	4	Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, he passed.
	5	Can he take the exam? ~ Yes, next summer.
	6	How long does the course? ~ It's only one term.
)	AE	BOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
	1	How long do you need to study for a degree in chemistry?
	2	How long do you need to study for a Masters degree?
	3	How long does a university term last?
	4	How long does a school term last?
	5	If you fail exams, can you always take them again?



### B University subjects and people 60

	Degree subject	Person
1	medicine	a doctor
2	psychology	a psychologist
3	economics	an economist
4	law	a lawyer
5	politics	a politician
6	engineering	an engineer
7	architecture	an architect
8	computer science	an IT manager a software engineer
9	journalism	a journalist a reporter
10	business studies	a businessman/woman a manager



### 4 Complete the sentences. Use the degree subject on the right to help you.

•	He always wanted to be a lawyer .	LAW
1	She wants to be a	MEDICINE
2	When did he become an?	<b>ENGINEERING</b>
3	She's studying to become an	ARCHITECTURE
4	Why does he want to be a?	PSYCHOLOGY
5	She works as an	<b>ECONOMICS</b>
6	I don't know anyone who wants to be a	POLITICS
7	Is it difficult to become a?	JOURNALISM
8	I knew he'd become a	BUSINESS STUDIES

#### 5 Complete the words. 'Degree subject' or 'person'? Write DS or P.

•	jo <u>u</u> rnal <u>i s</u> m	DS	7	$\rho - l - t - c -$	1-14-4m Lumin
1	I _ wy _ r	1-19-1-10-10-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1	8	eng _ n r	-
2	ar it _ ct	The second secon	9	m - d - c - n -	10 - 10 to 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
3	c = mp = t = sci = c		10	$ec _n m _c$	
4	s tw_ r _ e _ g _ ne _ r	140/200000 140/2000 (100/20)	11	$IT m \rightarrow n - g - r$	
5	ps _ ch _ l _ g _	plantage and provide the same	12	r _ p _ rt	a sandala minu
6	b_s_n_ss st_ds				

Test yourself. Cover the subjects and people and look at the pictures. Can you remember the subjects and people?



## 44 I can name jobs 6

What do you do?

What's your job?

I'm ...

#### a/an with jobs spotlight

We use a/an when we say what people's jobs are. He's a builder. Not He's builder.

She's a teacher and he's an engineer.



a police officer



a businessman/ businesswoman



a shop assistan



a nurse



a builder



a teacher



a secretary



a hairdresser



a chef



a dentist



a soldier



a cleaner



a vet



a pilot



a lorry driver also a train/bus/taxi driver

Word	Example	Meaning
self-employed	Are you self-employed?	working for yourself, not for a company
uuemployed	I'm <b>unemployed,</b> but I'm looking for a job.	with no job, but wanting to work
retired	My grandfather is <b>retired</b> now.	= My grandfather has stopped work because he is over 65.
housewife or househusband	She's a <b>housewife</b> now, but she was a lawyer.	a woman or a man who looks after the house and family and doesn't go out to work
boss	Who's <b>the boss</b> in this company?	a person who tells people what to do in their jobs

1								
1	The most important person in	the	company is the	(boss)	hairdresser.			
	A police officer/vet works with							
2	A shop assistant/dentist sells	thing	IS.					
3	A housewife/nurse works in a	a hos	pital.					
4	Retired people are usually yo	ung/	old.					
5	An unemployed person has/h	nasn'i	got a job.					
6	A businesswoman/soldier car	be s	self-employed.					
7	A businessman usually has a	secre	tary/househusb	and.				
8								
9	A lorry driver/chef works in a	kitch	nen.					
10	A builder/cleaner works outd	oors	a lot.					
	orrect the spelling mistake	<b>S</b> .						
	teecher teacher	5	polis officer _		10	houswife		
1	bisnessman	6	retaired		11	self-emploied		
2	shop asistant	7	bilder		12	solder		
3	airdresser	8	lory driver		*** *** **			
4	secretairy	9	cleener					
Co	omplete the sentences.							
	Does she stay at home with t	he cl	nildren? ~ Yes, s	he's _	a housewife.	CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE		
1								
2								
3	Has she got a job? ~ No, she							
4	Does he tell people what to					14 Alex		
5								
6								
7	Does she work with students							
8	Does he work in that restaur							
O	DOCS TIE WORK III LIIGE PESTAGIS	JI 1C:	105, 110 5		- Frank			
AE	BOUT YOU Think about yo	ur fa	amily and peo	ple y	ou know. V	Vrite their names if		
	the jobs below.							
	a nurse my friend Christa			5	someone w	ho is retired		
	a vet I don't know anyone	uho's	a vet.					
	a soldier Mr Rosakis			6				
	a secretary			7				
1	o occircion y			,				
1	a chof			Q				
2	a chef			8				
	a hairdressersomeone who is unemployed			9	a <b>businessn</b>	nan or woman		

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. What are the jobs? Then cover the words and examples in the table and look at the meanings. Can you say the words?



#### 45 I can describe a job Do Unit 44 first

### A Basic information 6

Where does he work?







Who does she work for?

She works for

a car company, e.g. Toyota an airline. e.g. Cathay Pacific

What hours does he work?

He's got

a full-time job, e.g. 40 hours a week a part-time job, e.g. 15 hours a week

He works

long hours, e.g. 12 hours a day from nine to live

How much does she earn?

She earns a lot. I ler salary is \$80,000 a year. He doesn't earn very much. He gets low wages.

#### Glossary

earn receive money for the work that you do

salary money you receive every month for the work that you do wages money you receive every week for the work that you do low If you earn low wages, you earn less than is normal. OPP high

Complete the sentences with words and phrases in the box.

		office an American airline she work hours a day work for long hours ✓ earn much job ten to six a factory does he earn
	•	He works long hours 6 Where does ?
	1	She works ten 7 She works for
	2	1 work in 8 She doesn't
	3	He works in an
	4	Who do you ? 10 I work from
	5	How much?
2	Co	omplete the text.
	Μ	y sister's a nurse in our local ▶ hospital . She only works (1)time
	-	about 15 hours (2) week – and she doesn't (3) much money.
	Νι	rses in our country generally get (4) wages. Her husband is a doctor, and he
	W	orks very long (5) sometimes 14 hours a (6) He earns
	ab	out \$90,000 a (7)
3		BOUT YOU If you have a job, write answers to the questions. If you don't, ask meone who has a job.
	1	What's your job?
	2	Who do you work for?
	3	Where do you work?
	4	How many hours do you work?



### B What do you have to do? 6.



#### Daniel Alessi, architect

design buildings', but I also have to:

- meet<sup>2</sup> clients and discuss problems with them
- go to meetings<sup>3</sup> with colleagues
- · write reports

I spend a lot of time talking to people.

#### Eliane Sotano, secretary

I only work part-time now. I have to:

- · make phone calls4
- · send letters, faxes and emails
- organize meetings for my boss
- type<sup>5</sup> reports

I spend a lot of time answering the phone!

#### spotlight Spend time doing something

**Spend time** theans to do something for a period of time: I **spend a lot of time** working and travelling.
I **spent** a week writing the report.

## There are mistakes in six sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

- ► I spent a day to meet clients. meeting
- 1 He does a lot of phone calls.
- I have a meet this afternoon.She spends a lot of time type.
- 4 She designs offices.
- 5 Could you organizate a meeting? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I wrote the report last night.
- 7 We discussed about our problems. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I answered to the phone. ....

#### Glossary

have to do something must do something

report a piece of writing giving

client a person who pays an architect. lawyer, etc. for his or her work and help discuss something talk about something

NOT discuss about something colleague a person who works with you

information about work you have done send You write a letter, then you send it to the person.

organize If you organize a meeting, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.

**answer the phone** pick up the phone when it rings and speak

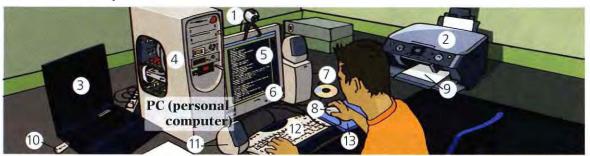
#### 6 Complete the text.

I have a really interesting new job in the office of a language school. It's a ▶ full-time.
job and I work from nine to five. I (1) new students when they arrive at the
school, and of course, I (2) the phone and (3) letters and
emails. I (4) a lot of time (5) phone calls to help students
who don't speak much English. I really like my other (6) in the office – they're
very friendly, and if I have any problems we can (7) them. I also
(8) meetings for my boss with important (9) from other
countries. Sometimes, I (10) to go to meetings with her. It's a nice place to work.



### 46 I can talk about using a computer

### A The computer 60



- webcam
- printer laptop
- hard drive
- screen
- 6 monitor 7 disk 8 mouse
- 9 hard copy/printout
- 10 memory stick
- speaker
- keyboard
- 13 mouse mat

spotlight keep

Keep means 'to put something in a place so that you know where it is'. Where do you keep your passport? ~ I keep it in a box under the bed.

1	Correct	the	spelling	mistakes.
---	---------	-----	----------	-----------

- ► hard copie hard copy
- screan ---
- personal commuter
- 4 memory stik
- 5 moniter .....
- 6 keybord \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 disque ......
- 8 webcame

#### Complete the sentences.

- ► You type information using the <u>keyboard</u>.
- 1 You listen to music using the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 You get \_\_\_\_\_ using the printer.
- 3 The information in your computer is on the .....
- 4 A small computer you can carry is called a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 You can keep a copy of information from your computer on a \_\_\_\_\_

or a

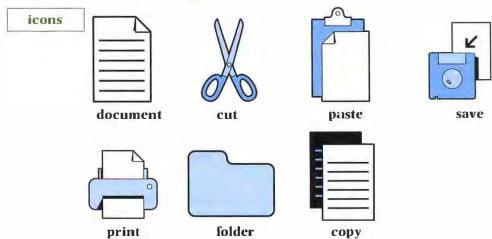
- 6 You move the \_\_\_\_ with your hand.
- 7 You put the mouse on the \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 You read your emails on the \_\_\_\_\_.

### **3** ABOUT YOU **Write your answers or ask another student.**

- 1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it?
- 2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it?
- 3 Have you got a laptop? If so, where do you keep it?
- 4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos? 5 Have you got a webcam? If so, what do you use it for?
- Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.



### B Word processing 6 l



- 1 I opened a new document and typed a letter.
- 2 I cnt a sentence from the beginning of the letter.
- 3 I moved it to the end. (I clicked on the 'paste' icon.)
- 4 I saved the document in my 'letters' folder.
- 5 I printed it out. or I did a printout.
- 6 I made a backup copy on a disk.

#### **5** Match 1 – 7 with a – h.

- ➤ You type \_\_\_d\_\_
- a a paper copy of your letter.
- 1 You open \_\_\_\_
- b a backup copy.
- 2 You print out \_\_\_\_\_
- c the letter you typed in a folder.
- 3 You cut \_\_\_\_\_
- d your letter or report. ✓
- 4 You click on \_\_\_\_\_
- e a word or sentence from your document.
- 5 You make \_\_\_\_.
- f a sentence to a different place.
- 6 You move \_\_\_\_
- g a new document.
- 7 You save \_\_\_\_\_
- h an icon.

#### Glossary

beginning the first part of something orrend (The middle is between the beginning and the end.) move something take something and put it in another place click on something



a backup copy a copy of a document or folder that you can use if you lose the first one (You make a backup copy.)

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ► Which folder did you <u>save</u> the document in?
- 1 She \_\_\_\_\_ on the copy icon.
- 2 You can write 'Hello' at the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of an email, and 'best wishes' at the
- 3 I always \_\_\_\_\_\_ a backup copy of my work.
- 4 I typed a letter to my boss and then I \_\_\_\_\_\_ a printout.
- 5 My letter wasn't very interesting, so I \_\_\_\_\_\_ a few sentences.
- 6 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ your work in the correct folder?
- 7 When you \_\_\_\_\_ a new document, you can start writing.
- 8 The beginning and the end of the letter were good, but the \_\_\_\_\_ part was terrible.

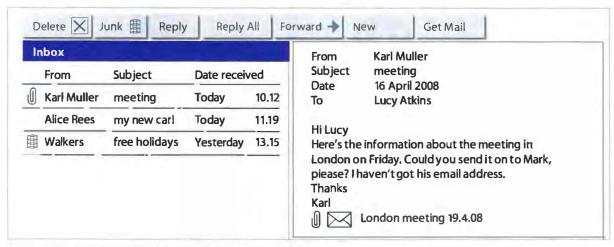


Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember what the icons mean?



### 47 I can use email and the internet

#### A Email 6



Have you checked your emails this morning?

Yes, Karl sent me an email with an attachment, and I have to forward it to Mark.

And I got an email from Alice about her new car. I'll reply to it later.

0	True	or	false?	Write	7	or F.
---	------	----	--------	-------	---	-------

	There are two messages in Lucy's inbox	+	
1	Lucy received two junk mail messages	_	
2	Lucy has to send an attachment to Mark		
3	There's an attachment with Alice's email.		
4	Lucy sent Karl an email		
5	Lucy hasn't deleted Alice's message.	_	
6	Lucy will reply to Walkers' email		
7	Lucy got an email from Karl		
8	Karl has got Mark's email address		

#### Glossary

check your emails look and see if you have any email messages send PT sent If you send someone an email, you write it, and then send it to the person.

get an email If someone sends you an email, you get it. (also receive) reply to an email write an answer to a message and send it

### ② One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

	I have to the junk mailaelete
1	I must reply Jean's email.
_	

- 4 Have you checked your?
- 5 Forward the attachment John.
- 2 Did you my message?3 I received an from Li today.
- 6 She Tia an email yesterday.

#### B ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1	How often do you send emails?
2	Who do you send them to?

- What kind of junk mail do you receive?
   Do people send you attachments? What's in them?
- 5 Do you always reply to emails quickly?



#### B The internet 60

Questions	Answers	ABOUT YOU
What's your email address?	It's louella@yahoo.co.uk	1
Do you buy things on the internet?	Yes, I buy books.	2
What's a web address for news in your country?	It's www.bbc.co.uk/news	3
Which websites do you visit most?	eBay and MySpace.	4
Have you got broadband?	Yes, it's very fast.	5
How often do you go online?	I <b>use the internet</b> every evening.	6
Do you visit chatrooms?	Yes, I often chat online.	7
Do you <b>dowuload</b> music onto your computer?	Yes, or I download it onto my MP3 player.	8
Which search engines do you use?	I use Google and Yahoo.	9

### 4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

•	online	on the internet	S		
1	web address	email address			
2	visit a website	go to a website			
3	a search engine	ne a website			
4	fast	quick			
5	MP3 player	CD player			
6	download songs	copy songs from the internet			
7	go online	use the internet			
8	visit a chatroom	m chat online			
9	broadband	download			
10	data	computer information			

#### Complete the sentences.

Have you got an MP3 \_\_Player\_\_\_\_?
1 We use different \_\_\_\_\_\_ engines.
2 It's not very expensive to \_\_\_\_\_\_ music from the internet.
3 Do you spend a lot of time \_\_\_\_\_\_ the internet?
4 I'd like to get \_\_\_\_\_\_ because my internet connection is very slow.
5 My favourite \_\_\_\_\_\_ is eBay.

6 You can websites or chatrooms.

6 ABOUT YOU Complete the 'about you' column in the table, or ask another student the questions.

#### Glossary

on the internet (NOT on internet)
web address = internet address
broadband With a broadband
connection, you can get
information from the internet
very fast.

fast (also quick) opp slow (150 kph for cars is fast; 20 kph is slow.) online on the internet chatroom a place on the internet

where people read and reply to messages, usually about a subject, e.g. cars, music (The verb is chat.)

download If you download information from the internet, you copy it to your computer. (The information is called data.)

MP3 player a small machine you can listen to music on, e.g. an iPod



### Review: Study and work

#### Unit 42

1	Complete	the	names	of th	e schoo	l sub	jects.
---	----------	-----	-------	-------	---------	-------	--------

▶ maths b\_\_\_\_\_

3 L\_\_\_\_\_

7 g

8 c\_\_\_\_\_

9 d\_\_\_\_\_and t\_\_\_\_

10 m

#### 2 Match 1 - 9 with a - j.

▶ start \_\_\_\_\_\_

a at PE

1 take \_\_\_\_\_

b a uniform

2 be good \_\_\_\_\_

c secondary school ✓

leave \_\_\_\_

at school until 18

go \_\_\_\_\_ work \_\_\_\_\_ to school a job

6 wear

university g

7 get \_\_\_\_ homework

do \_\_\_\_\_

hard

9 stay \_\_

an exam

#### 3 Complete the dialogues with one word.

▶ Did he stay on at school? ~ No, he <u>left</u> at 16.

Did you do well in your exam? ~ No, I did \_\_\_\_\_.

2 She passed the exam, didn't she? ~ No, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.

Nico didn't go to a private school. ~ That's right, he went to a \_\_\_\_\_\_ school.

Are you good at chemistry? ~ No, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ at it!

Is Riete's daughter at primary school? ~ No, she's only 4 – she's at \_\_\_\_\_\_ school.

Is Jao the worst at maths? ~ No! He's the \_\_\_\_\_! He's very good at it.

#### Unit 43

#### 1 Complete the text with a word in the correct form.

Last month my sister started university. She's ▶ doing a degree in computer (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ The course (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ three years, and there are three ten-week (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in every year. She has to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of essays and pass exams. If she fails them, she has to take them (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_, and then wait for the results. If she passes her final exams, she'll get her (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_. If she does well, after that she can do 



#### 2 Complete the words in the table.

People	Subjects	Phrases
journalist	medic	do resea
undergradu	econom	do a deg
engin	architect	write an es
law	bus studies	
politic	polit	

#### Unit 44

Complete the sentences with words from the box. You can use each word more than once.

	pilot dentist retired nurse businessman/businesswoman builder police officer unemployed vet soldier hairdresser shop assistant
>	You have to stand up or walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer, a hairdresser, a soldier, a builder, or a shop assistant.
1	You probably have to go to university to be
2	You need to be good with your hands to be
3	You need to be good at maths or with numbers to be
4	You probably have a lot of free time if you are
5	You usually have to wear a uniform if you are
6	You work in an office most of the time if you are

#### Unit 45

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

•	write	a	the phone
1	send	b	reports 🗸
2	make	C	problems
3	answer	d	clients
4	organize	е	buildings
5	discuss	f	long hours
6	work for	g	meetings
7	design	h	phone calls
8	meet	i	a computer company
9	work	ì	emails

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.



#### 2 Complete the conversation.

What's your ▶\_iob ? ~ I work (1) \_\_\_\_\_ an office. Do you work long hours? ~ No, it's part-\_\_\_\_(2). How many hours is that? ~ Three hours (3) \_\_\_\_\_ day.

And what do you have to do? ~ I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of time sending emails.

Do you get a good salary? ~ No, I don't (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_very much.

What about the people you work with? ~ Oh, my (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_ are very nice.

#### Unit 46

#### 1 Complete the words and phrases.

- ▶ Do you need hard <u>copy</u> ?
- 1 Did you bring your lap\_\_\_\_?
- 2 It's a nice key. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I need a new mouse .\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 What's a memory.....?
- 5 Did you make a back \_\_\_\_ copy?
- 6 The information is on the hard \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Can you do a print\_\_\_\_\_\_, please?
- 8 Have you got a \_\_\_\_cam?

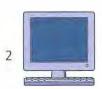
#### 2 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?

F (	)	L	D	E	R		
		1					
		2					
		3					
			4				
5						100	
6							
7							

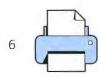
The word in the grey squares is















Unit 47

1 Find eight more words or phrases in the circle.

MP3 player	
NATURAL DE SERVICIO DE LA CONTRACTOR DE	

2 Complete the crossword.

				▶R	E	P	L	Y	
1					М				
	2				Α				
		3			1				
			4		L				
	1			5	Α				
		6			D				
	7				D				
	8				R				
		9			Е				
				10	S				
			11		S				

	I must <u>reply</u>	to her email.
1	Send it as an	77.4111.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.
2	Did you get my	?
3	Do you often go	?
4	l always	junk mail.
5	My computer is very	
6	How many emails do you.	······································
7	Have you got	?
8	I spend hours on the	
9	Did you	my email?
10	He doesn't	email very much
11	Do you often	chatrooms?

chat broad down web player 🗸 on band engine in search box junk load line room site mail MP3 🗸

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.



### I can say what I like

### A Love it or hate it? ••

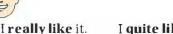
















I don't like it very much. I quite like it.



I hate football.

#### spotlight like/love/hate + -ing

After like, love, and hate, use a noun, a pronoun, or-ing form. football. 1 like love hate playing football. I like/love/hate learning English.

#### Who likes it more? A or B?

- A quite likes coffee. B really likes coffee.
- 1 A doesn't like studying. B thinks studying is OK.
- 2 A likes chocolate. B loves chocolate.
- 3 A really likes sport. B thinks it's OK.
- 4 A doesn't like shopping very much. B doesn't like shopping.
- 5 A hates pop music. B doesn't like pop music very much.
- 6 A really likes tea. B quite likes tea.

- B likes coffee more. (A likes coffee less.)
- \_\_\_\_likes studying less.
- \_\_\_\_\_ likes chocolate more.
- \_\_\_\_\_ likes sport more. \_\_\_\_\_likes shopping less.
- \_\_\_\_ likes pop music less.
- \_\_\_\_likes tea more.

#### Correct the mistakes.

- Do you like watch tennis?
- I hate it chocolate.
- 2 They don't like to doing homework very much.
- 3 He doesn't like very much speaking English.
- 4 I like quite shopping.
- 5 She doesn't like drive.
- 6 I think tennis OK.
- 7 I like really going out with friends.
- 8 She loves watch sport.

#### ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student your answers.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_watching TV.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ studying English.
- 3 | driving.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_shopping for clothes.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ cleaning the house.
- I writing emails.

Do you like watching tennis?

- I \_\_\_\_\_ talking on the phone.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ going to the cinema.



### B It's my favourite thing 60

#### meetpeopleweb.com

Name Mirko Zitec

Work I work for a TV company.

It's a wonderful job – I love it.

Study I'm learning to play the guitar.

It's good fun and my teacher's fantastic.

Sports My favourite sport is tennis, but I also

enjoy playing football.

TV/cinema | don't watch TV – it's very **boring**, but

I'm interested in old films from the 1960s. I prefer old films to modern

ones, in fact.

Music I'm very keen on jazz; I go to a club

every Friday.

#### Glossary

wonderful/fantastic very good

fun If something is fun it makes you happy.

favourite Your favourite thing or person is

the one you like most

the one you like most.

enjoy doing something If you enjoy doing something, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. (The adjective is enjoyable.)

boring opp interesting

**prefer** ... to ... like someone or something more than another person or thing

**be keen on something** like or be interested in something

#### spotlight interesting/interested

I think modern art is interesting means 'I'm interested in modern art.'
NOT I'm interesting in modern art.

4 Write eight more sentences using words from columns 1, 2, and 3.

	1	2	3	
•	It's ✓	not interested	boss.	It's a wonderful city.
1	1	the party	city. ✓	
2	l'm	favourite	watching TV.	
3	Му	enjoy	film is 'Tootsie'.	
4	She	fantastic	on tennis?	
5	He's a	a wonderful 🗸	in politics.	
6	Was	you keen	programme.	
7	lt's	prefers reading	good fun?	
8	Are	a boring	to writing.	

**5** Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

	interesting	fun	interested	keen	enjoy	favourite	prefer	enjoyable 🗸
						ABOUT	YOU	
	Do you think	c flying is	s <u>enjoyable</u>	?				
1	Is learning E	nglish go	oodboo		. ?			and the state of t
2	Do you		meat t	o fish?				
3	What's your	~ m: m to	ci	ty?				
4	Are you		in spo	rt?				
5	Are you		on cla	ssical mu	sic?			
6	Do you		walkin	g in the c	ountryside	?		
7	Do you think	history	is		?			

6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 5, or ask another student.



## 49 I can talk about sport

#### A Games 6

game	place	equipment = special things you need for the game	score = the number of points or goals you have
football	pitch	goal football	1-0 one nil 2-1 two one or two goals to one
rugby	pitch	rugby ball	10-6 ten six or ten <b>points</b> to six
ice hockey	rink	goal stick puck	3-2 three two or three goals to two
volleyball	court	net	15–10 fifteen points to ten
tennis	court	net racket tennis ball	6-3 six three or six <b>games</b> to three $6-2$ is one set in tennis
basketball	court	basket	60 – 44 sixty points to forty-four

0	Combine words to	find games,	places,	equipment	and s	cores
---	------------------	-------------	---------	-----------	-------	-------

volley 🗸	pitch	tennis	ice	▶ volleyball	
football	ball 🗸	basket	nil	Managed 1 Managed 1 Page 1 Pag	
racket	three	hockey	ball		

#### 2 True or false? Write T or F. Change the false sentences and make them true.

	You score goals in basketball.	Г	100 score points in basketball.
1	Sticks and rackets are equipment.		
2	You have a net in tennis and volleyball.		
3	You score points in ice hockey.		
4	You play football on a court.		
5	You play ice hockey with rackets.		
6	You play volleyball on a court.		
7	You score points in rugby.		
8	You play rugby with a puck.		and the state of t

### 3 Complete the sentences.

<b></b>	I need to get a new tennis	s racket	
1	I watched a fantastic	of ice hockey on TV last night.	
2	People who play	are usually very tall.	
3	It was six	to four to Federer in the second	
4	What was the football	? ~ It was three	(3-0).
5	The football	is next to the tennis	



#### B Football

ITALY	
Cagliari 1	Torino 1
Lazio 3	Livorno 1
Palermo 3	AS Roma 3
Sampdoria 1	Parma 2
Treviso 1	Fiorentina 3
Played Friday:	
AC Milan 1	Inter Milan 0

Le	aq	ue	ta	bl	le

	played	won	drawn	lost	goals for	goals against	points
ACMilan	34	24	9	1	63	22	81
Inter Milan	34	24	4	6	75	27	76
AS Roma	34	22	5	7	61	26	71

On Friday, AC Milan won their important match against Inter Milan. Khaladze scored the only goal in the 70<sup>th</sup> minute. This means they are still top of the table but now lead later by five points. On Saturday, Cagliari could

only draw their match with Torino. At Palermo, Roma were leading 3-0 at half-time, but Palermo came back in the second half to make the final score 3-3. Lazio beat Livorno 3-1, while Treviso lost 3-1 to Fiorentina.

### 4 Correct the bold words.

- ► Shevchenko did two goals. <u>scored</u>
- 1 Lazio have a play next Saturday.
- 2 Inter are playing with Parma. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 AC Milan are number one of the table.
- 4 Treviso lost 3 1 with Fiorentina.
- 5 Parma beated Sampdoria.
- 6 Milan win their game last week.
- 7 Palermo draw with AS Roma.
- 8 Lazio won Livorno 3 1.

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ► They scored in the second half.
- 1 It's an important \_\_\_\_\_\_next week.
- 2 We are playing \_\_\_\_\_\_ Valencia.
- 3 Seville \_\_\_\_\_1 − 2 to Barcelona.
- 4 Bilbao \_\_\_\_\_\_ 2 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Villareal.
- 5 It was 0 0 at half-\_\_\_\_.
- 6 On Sunday Espanyol \_\_\_\_\_ Real Betis 2 1.
- 7 Ronaldinho \_\_\_\_\_ the goal.
- 8 We \_\_\_\_\_ our last match 4 1.
- 9 They were \_\_\_\_\_\_1 − 0 at half-time.
- 10 What was the final \_\_\_\_\_?

#### Glossary

match a game between two teams, e.g. Parma and Lazio against One player or team plays against another player or team.

score get a goal or points in a game

top of the table/league number one in the table/league

lead be in front of others in a game or sport

half-time a period of rest between the first and second half

first half/second half The game is in two halves. (Bach half is 45 minutes long.)

final score the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g. 3-2

### spotlight Irregular verbs

#### win PT won

We won 2 – 1 against Sampdoria. beat someone PT beat

We beat Samudoria 2 – 1.

draw with someone PT drew

PP drawn

We drew 3-3 with Roma. lose to someone PT lost

We lost 1 – 0 to Milan.

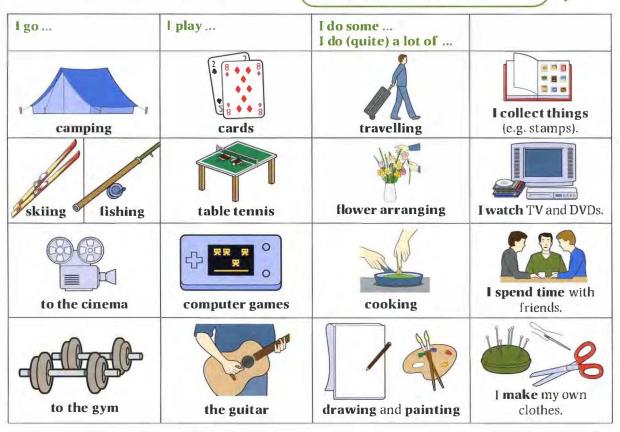
- 6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Look at the football scores in a newspaper this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.
  - ▶ Bayern Munich beat Borussia Dortmund 1-0. Ballack scored in the 34th minute.



### 50 I can talk about my free time

### A Common activities 6

What do you do in your free time?



- Can you do these things inside your home? Or do you have to do them in another place?
  - watch TV\_inside
  - ogo to the gym another place
  - 1 go fishing
- 3 do flower arranging
- 4 do some drawing
- 5 go camping
  - 6 play cards
- 2 do a lot of cooking \_\_\_\_\_\_ 7 do a lot of travelling \_\_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 play computer games \_\_\_\_\_
- Complete the sentences with go, play, do, collect, or spend.
  - ▶ I never play cards.

  - 2 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ old clocks.
  - 3 I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ the guitar.
  - 4 She \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of cooking.
- 5 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ table tennis?
- 1 Do you often \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema? 6 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ time with your family?
  - 7 They \_\_\_\_\_ skiing every February.
  - 8 She \_\_\_\_\_ quite a lot of travelling in spring.
    - 9 She \_\_\_\_\_ all her own dresses.
- ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Write 'yes' by the ones you do now. Tick (✓) the ones you would like to do. Put a cross (X) by the ones you aren't interested in.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and say the names of the activities.



### B Hobbies 👀

#### Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many hobbies. Older people enjoy gardening, fishing, and repairing cars. For younger people, there are various clubs in school where children can learn many activities. Popular hobbies include sport, playing musical instruments, computers, listening to music, cooking, and collecting different things.



Alexandra: "I like listening to rock and classical music. I also

like playing football with my friends. But my favourite hobby is **shooting** (you can see me in the

photo), and I'm quite good at it."

**Veronica**: "I have many hobbies: cooking, **reading**, drawing,

and **singing** in the shower. My favourite is drawing. It's wonderful to see pictures appearing on paper."

**Dima**: "I play the guitar, and I can **sing** Russian and English

songs. I'm good at swimming, snowboarding and

skiing. I also like travelling very much."

#### Glossary

hobby FLURAL hobbies an activity that you like doing in your free time

gardening working in your garden

repair cars make cars work when they have a problem

various (places) a number of different (places)

**club** a group of people who do something together

popular If something is popular, many people like it.

musical instrument a thing used for playing music, e.g. a guitar

listen to something

classical music e.g. music by Bach and Mozart (NOT classic music)

read



sing

Robbie Williams is a singer. He sings songs.

B	True or false?	Correct the	false sentences
	ride of false.	Correct tric	Taise seriectices

•	Alexandra doesn't like rock music. False. She likes rock music.
1	Older people enjoy gardening.
2	Playing a musical instrument isn't popular in Russia.
3	Dima plays the piano.
4	Veronica's favourite hobby is reading.
5	Dima has various hobbies.
6	Veronica's quite good at shooting.
7	Veronica dances in the shower.
8	Younger people like repairing cars.

6	ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY	Write	vour	answers o	r ask	another	student
	ABOUT TOO AID TOOK COUNTRY	***	,	411311613 0	431	and the	Jedaciie

1	What's your favourite hobby?	
2	What hophics are popular with older popula?	

2 What hobbies are popular with vounger people?

3 What hobbies are popular with younger people?4 What classical music do you listen to?



### 51 I can talk about music Do Unit 50 first

### A Pop and rock 60

Arctic Monkeys are a four-piece band from Sheffield, England. They first became well known in 2004 when people were able to download their music from the internet. Their first two singles went to number 1 in the UK singles chart in 2005, and their first album, 'Whatever People Say I Am, That's What I'm Not', sold over 350,000 copies in its first week.

The group are: Alex Turner, who is the lead singer and plays the guitar, Jamie Cook and Nick O'Malley, who both play the guitar, and Matthew Helder, who is the drummer and also sings.



#### What can you remember? Circle the correct answer.

- ► There are four ive people in the band.
- They first became well known in 2004/2005.
- 2 People were able/unable to download music in 2004.
- 3 Their first two/three singles went to number 1.
- 4 Their first single/album sold over 350,000 copies in the first week.
- 5 Alex Turner/Jamie Cook is the lead singer.
- 6 Matthew Helder plays the guitar/drums.

#### Complete the sentences.

>	Paul McCartney plays the guitar
1	Another word for a band is a
2	The most important singer is the singer.
3	Someone who plays the drums is the
4	A CD with one song on it is a
5	A CD with about ten songs on it is an
6	The is the list of singles that sell most in a week
7	The Beatles first became well in the 1960s.

#### Glossary

band e.g. Coldplay, Franz Ferdinand, U2 (also group) well known SYN famous be able to If you are able to do something, you can do it. OPP unable download music copy music from the internet onto a computer, MP3 player, etc. single one song on a CD number 1 the single that sells the most in one week the singles chart the list of pop music singles that sell the most in one week album a number of songs, usually about 10, on a CD lead singer the most important singer

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or	ask another student
----------------------------------	---------------------

8 You can \_\_\_\_ music from the internet.

1	Who's your favourite group?
2	Who's in the band, and what instruments do they play?
3	When did they first become well known?
4	What's the name of one of their singles?
5	What's the name of one of their albums?
6	What's your favourite song by this band?



### **B** Classical music 60



A concert of classical music.



Sir Simon Rattle, conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra.



Vanessa Mae, violinist, playing a violin concerto by Mozart.

by



Pianist Sviatoslav Richter, Operasinger Cecilia playing one of Beethoven's piano sonatas.



Bartoli, performing in Cosi Fan Tutte.



We say a book by (Tolstoy). a song by (Robbie Williams), a symphony by (Mozart), a painting by (Picasso), a film by (Martin Scorsese), etc.

spotlight

Cellist Yo Yo Ma, playing the cello concerto by the English composer, Edward Elgar.

Correct the	spelling	mistakes.

	violinista violinist	3	clasical	6	composor
1	conducter	4	conciert	7	performe
2	orchestre	5	celo	8	pianiste

#### Complete the sentences

-	omplete the sentences.	
<b></b>	Music by Bach, Brahms or Mozart is <u>classical</u> music.	
1	A large group of people who play classical music together is called	an
2	The person who stands in front of them is the	•
3	A person who plays the piano is a	
4	A person who plays the violin is a	
5	A person who plays the cello is a	
6	A person who sings opera is an	
7	A person who writes music is a	
8	'Carmen' is an opera Bizet.	
9	Last night we went to a classical music Placid	lo Domingo was

Cover the texts and look at the pictures. What can you see in each one?



... with the London Symphony Orchestra. It was fantastic.

### 52 I can talk about films

### A Describing films 60



A thriller is often exciting.



A comedy is funny.



A war film is often violent.



A love story is romantic.



A action film is exciting.



A horror film is frightening.



A cartoon is often funny.

spotlight	What k
-----------	--------

~ It's a thriller. What kind of music do you like? ~ Rock music.

ind of ...?

it?

- Make kinds of film from the letters.
  - rwa milf war film 1 rillerht
  - 2 moyecd
  - 3 tanico ifml
- 4 onacrot
- 5 vole rosty
- 6 rohror limf

- Match 1–5 with a–f.
  - ▶ an exciting d a war film
  - 1 a romantic \_\_\_\_
- b comedy

- 2 a frightening \_\_\_\_ c love story
- 3 a violent .....
- d action film /
- 4 a funny
- e thriller
- 5 an exciting
- f horror film

Write down new words in a notebook.

Write one adjective to describe each picture.











Test yourself. Cover the words and name the different kinds of film in the pictures at the top of the page.



### B What's on? 60



Mercedes (M) and Enrique (E) are talking.

- M What's on at the cinema?
- E There's a film on called Rumor Has It.
- M Mmm. What kind of movie is it?
- E It's a romantic comedy. It's about a woman and her relationship with her boyfriend and family. It's had good reviews.
- M OK. Who's in it?
  - B Er, it stars Kevin Costner and Jennifer Aniston.
- M Oh, I like Kevin Costner he's a good actor. Who's the director?
- E Rob Reiner. He made When Harry Met Sally.
- M Right. And where's it on?
- E The Odeon.
- M OK. Let's go and see it.

#### Glossary

What's on? = 'What film can wesee?' cinema a place where you see films

movie a film

It's about ... = The subject is ...

**review** an opinion of a film in a newspaper or on the radio, TV or internet

star be one of the main actors in a film (The person is a star.)

actor e.g. Kevin Costner or Jenniser Aniston

(Afemale actor can also be called an actress.)

director person who makes a film, e.g. Steven Spielberg Where's it on? = 'Where can we see it?'

see a film at the cinema (NOT watch a film at the cinema)

5	Complete	the	conversation.
---	----------	-----	---------------

a lalbet's on

А	at the cinema?	
В	A film called The Constant Garden	ner.
Α	Oh, what (1)	of film is it?
В	It's a thriller.	
Α	What's it (2)	?
В	I'm not sure, but it's had good	
	(3)	
Α	Oh, and who's (4)	it?

B	it (5) Kaiph Fiennes	
	and Rachel Weiss.	
Α	They're both good (6)	
	Who's the (7)?	
В	A Brazilian called Fernando Meirelles.	
Α	OK. And where's it (8)	?
В	At the ABC cinema.	
Α	Let's go and (9)it.	
В	Fine.	

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1	What kind of films do you like?
2	What was the last film you saw?
3	Where was it on?

4 Who are the stars of the film?

5 Who's the director? \_\_\_\_\_\_\_6 What's it about? \_\_\_\_\_\_

### 53 I can talk about the media

### A What is the media? 60

Word	Example	Meaning
media	The <b>media</b> often write about famous people.	TV. radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet
magazine	Do you read women's <b>magazines</b> ?	Something you can buy every week or month, often with stories and coloured photos e.g. <i>Time</i> , <i>Hola</i> .
opinion	What's your <b>opinion</b> of the events?	what you think about something
report	Journalists <b>report</b> the news from all over the world.	give information on the news; the person is a <b>reporter</b> (= journalist)
event	The Olympic Games is a very big event.	something important that happens. It can be good or bad.
die	Fortunately, nobody <b>died</b> in the accident.	stop living
war	The two countries were <b>at war</b> for ten years.	If a country is <b>at war</b> , it is fighting with another country; when a war ends, there is <b>peace</b> .
disaster	The tsunami was a terrible disaster.	something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die
celebrity (plural celebrities)	There were a lot of <b>celebrities</b> at the first night of the film.	famous person, usually from TV, film or sport
advertisement (also advert)	There are too many <b>adverts</b> on TV and in the papers.	text, picture or short film which tries to sell you something

### 1 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<b>•</b>	What do the media say about him?	What does the advert say about him?	D
1	There is peace between the two countries.	There is war between the two countries.	
2	What's your opinion of the news?	What do you think of the news?	
3	It was a great event.	It was a great advertisement.	
4	He is reporting from Seoul.	He is giving the news from Seoul.	
5	I read it in an article.	I read it in an advertisement.	
6	She's a TV celebrity.	She's on TV a lot.	
7	Where did he live?	Where did he die?	

<b>2</b> Co	mplete the	text with	words fron	n the table	in the	correct form.
-------------	------------	-----------	------------	-------------	--------	---------------

I he	is TV, radio, newspapers, (1), and the internet. The media
(2)	on important (3) from around the world; for example,
(4)	like the Asian tsunami, or (5) between different countries. As well as
rep	porting the news, the media give their (6) of events round the world. And reporters
also	o like to write about (7) such as Tom Cruise and Angelina Jolie.

Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Say the words.



### Sara.English.School

### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### B Your media 👀

Me	edia questionnaire		Glossary
1 2 3	Why do you read a newspaper?  a to find out what has happened b because it has interesting articles c for the sports results d for the business news  What do you watch on TV? a the news b soaps c films d nothing much  What do you listen to on the radio? a the news b music programmes c the weather forecast d nothing much  Do you believe what you read or hear in the news?		newspaper e.g. The Times, The Herald Tribune, Le Monde (also paper) find out get information or facts happen take place, e.g. 'We don't know what wil happen tomorrow.' article a piece of writing in a paper or magazine on TV/on the radio Nor in TV/in the radio, but in the paper the news a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world soap a story on TV two or three times a week about the lives and problems of a group of people nothing much nothing important programme a TV or radio show, e.g. the news weather forecast a description of the weather for the next few days believe think that something is true all = 100%, most = 80-95%, some = 30-50%, none = 0%
	a yes, all of it		spotlight watch, see, listen, hear
	b yes, most of it		We watch TV, but we see or watch a
	c yes, some of it d no, none of it		programme.  We listen to the radio, but we hear or lister
	d none or k		to a programme.
4 0	ircle the correct answer.		
•	See —)to the film.	5	See the programme/article on TV.
1	Read an article on/in the paper.	6	Did you hear –/to the sports results?
2	Let's listen to the/a news.	7	I heard all –/of it on/in the radio.
3	Watch a programme in/on TV.	8	Don't believe/listen what you see.
4	Find –/out what has happened.	9	I watched most –/of it.
_			

### **5** Complete the dialogues.

<b></b>	I always <u>read</u> a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read <u>all</u> of it?
1	Did you TV last night? ~ Yes, I a programme about dogs.
2	I read the story but I don't it's true. ~ No, of it is true. It's all false
3	Have you heard the ? ~ No, what's ?
4	Did you to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I the 8 o'clock news.
5	What's in the this morning? ~ I don't know; I never buy one.
6	Have you seen the weather? ~ Yes, it's going to rain.
7	What did you on TV? ~ Oh, nothing

6 ABOUT YOU Read the questionnaire again. Tick (✓) your answers, or write a different answer. Ask another student the questions.



### Review: Hobbies and interests

#### Unit 48

1 Write the phrases in the correct column.

1 🙂	2 🙂	3	4 😟	5
I really like it.			I think it's quite boring.	

I really like it. 🗸

I think it's quite boring.

I love it.

I think it's OK.

I really hate it.

It's my favourite thing.

I quite enjoy it.

I'm not very keen on it.

I don't like it very much.

It's wonderful.

I think it's fantastic.

I'm not very interested in it. It's quite enjoyable.

#### 2 Circle the correct word.

- Who is/does your favourite actor?
- 1 My mother isn't interested/interesting in tennis.
- 2 Our teacher is very keen in/on classical music.
- 3 Do you enjoy drive/driving?

- 4 We prefer swimming to/that running.
- 5 I think that film's very bored/boring.
- 6 Sue guite likes/likes guite studying English.

### Unit 49

1 Look at the games in the box. Write the answers below.

	football	rugby	ice hockey	volleyball	tennis	basketball		
1	1 These games use a round  ball: ▶ football,							
2	Players use their hands more than their feet in these games:						NAME OF TAXABLE PARTY OF TAXABLE PARTY.	
3	These gar	mes have r	nore than four	players when	they are pla	aying:	to through the second	
4	This game	e uses: a) r	ackets		minimum militari	b) sticks		

2 Read Chelsea's results for last year, and complete the sentences below.

	played	won	drawn	lost	goals for	goals against	points
Chelsea	38	29	4	5	72	22	91
Chelsea ▶	layed	38 (	(1)	co dilina di manggara proposaga no pose	. They won 2	29, they (2)	four,
and they (3)		fi	ve. They (4)		72	(5)	, and finished
the season (6	5)	s are small	of the lead	gue with	91 points.		



### Unit 50

2

	_			
1		omplete the dialogues.		
	<b></b>	Does he like gardening ?	~ Yes, he's always in the garden.	
	1	What's your h	obby? ~ I love camping. I	every year.
	2	Does she like cooking? ~ Yes, sl	he a lot of cooking.	
	3	Does he have a hobby? ~ Yes, h	he old cars and bikes.	
	4	Do you play a musical	? ~ No, I don't.	
	5	Do you listen to	music? ~ Yes, I do. I really like Mozart	•
	6	Do youa lot o	f travelling? ~ No. I prefer to	time with friends.
2		omplete answer 'd' in each q our country.	uestion. Then choose the answers	that are true for you o
	1	l enjoy		
		a playing cards b singing c	collecting things d	time with friends
	2	My favourite activity of these is		
		a travelling b camping c re	eading dto the gy	/m
	3	I'm quite good at		
		a swimming b cooking c d	lrawing d computer	manyuri (da
	4	I would like to		
		a paint well b play the guitar	c sing well dt	he piano
	5	is popular in my country.		
		a Table tennis b Skiing c Fi	shing d Flower	
U	n	it 51		
	•			
1	Pu	it the words from the circle i	into two groups. Give each group a	a title.
		entitle the manuscript and the m		band 🗸
	<u>b</u>	and		violin drummer
				orchestra cello
		Committee of the Commit	lea	ad singer composer
				single conductor
				guitar
			<del> </del>	
2	W	rite a different name to con	nplete each sentence.	
	1		is a famous opera singer in m	y country.
	2		is lead singer with	·
	3	element and the second	is a famous conductor.	
	4	The	orchestra comes from my	country.
	5	waterouthinton	is a great pianist.	
	6		by is one	of my favourite albums.
	.7	is number	1 in the charts at the moment.	
	8		is the drummer with	



#### Unit 52

1	Comp	lete	the	sen	tences
	COILIP	1000	LIIC	3611	CCIICCS.

<b></b>	It's an action	film and it's very exciting
1	lt's a w	film and it's very v
2	It's a	and it's very f
3	lt's a h	film and it's quite f
4	lt's a t	and it's very e
5	It's a L	story and it's very r.

#### 2

Co	omplete the conversation.
Α	There's a good film ▶ <u>On</u> at the Odeon cinema. It's called <i>Brokeback Mountain</i> .
В	I've never heard of it. What's it (1)?
Α	A relationship, a love relationship, between two cowboys.
В	Oh. Who's (2)it?
Α	It (3) Jake Gyllenhaal and Heath Ledger.
В	Oh, I like Jake Gyllenhaal. He's a very good (4)
Α	Yeah, and it's had great (5) in all the papers. The (6) is Ang Lee
	He made Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon. Would you like to go and (7)it?

#### Unit 53

#### 1 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it, and where does it go?

I usually buy newspaper every day to find what has happened, but yesterday I listened the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it TV. As usual most it was bad news: more than twenty people in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting about a television news who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

• • •	
<b></b>	<u>a</u>
1	m to annual management of the mount
2	0 % 10
3	Total automotion and the control of
4	
5	demontal (1.8); resemblement compressibility 3 for manufacture and sit
6	
7	TRISTON TO STATE OF THE STATE O

#### 2 Match 1 - 6 with a - f.

- 1 an opinion .\_\_\_
- 2 a news report \_\_\_
- 3 an event \_\_\_\_
- 4 an advertisement ....
- 5 the media ....
- 6 celebrities \_\_\_\_\_







## 54 I can arrange a holiday 6

Things you might do or arrange before you go abroad on holiday:

- book the flight
- book the accommodation
- find your passport
- get a visa
- get travel insurance
- get foreign currency
- pack your suitcase
- · hire a car

#### might + verb spotlight

Might means 'it is possible that' or 'perhaps'. Might is the same in all forms. You might be ill on holiday. He might forget his passport. It might be cold in March.

#### Circle the correct word.

- I have to get/find a visa.
- 1 We went abroad/holiday last summer.
- 2 I had to hire/arrange accommodation.
- 3 We might/have go to Japan in June.
- 4 I need to hire/get travel insurance.
- 5 Can we pack/hire a car here?
- 6 I must hire/find my passport.
- 7 Have you made/packed your suitcase?
- 8 Did you book/have the flight to Paris?

#### Glossary

go abroad go to another country on holiday If you are on holiday, you are not at work and you are away from home. book arrange the plane ticket, e.g. buy it before you travel

arrange something plan and organize something

flight a journey by plane accommodation a place to stay, e.g. a hotel find look and see where something is passport



visa a document or note in your passport which means you can travel to certain countries travel insurance You pay a company for travel insurance so they will help you if you lose something or are ill on holiday foreign of another country currency the money of a country, e.g. \$ (dollars) or € (euros) pack put clothes in a suitcase suitcase



hire pay to use something for a short time, e.g. a car, a bike

#### 2 Complete the text.

I'm going on ▶ holiday for two weeks this Saturday. I wanted to go (1) this					
year, perhaps to the Far East, and I finally decided to go to China. I booked the (2)					
with China Airlines. I needed (3)too, so I looked on the internet for hotels in					
Beijing. I found a nice one and (4) to stay there for the first week. I also had to (5)					
a visa, and I got some foreign (6) – Chinese Yuan. I paid €30 for					
travel (7); you never know, I (8) be ill or lose my things. Tomorrow					
I'm going to (9) my suitcase. I know I put my passport somewhere, but where? I'll					
have to (10) it before Saturday!					



Test yourself. Cover the list of things you might do before you go abroad. Can you remember the phrases and write your own list?



### 55 I can book a hotel room

### A Describing a hotel 6.

#### travelog.com

#### Atlanta Hotel (Vilnius, Lithuania)

We stayed in this hotel near the Old Town where we had a beautiful bedroom with good facilities: minibar1, internet access<sup>2</sup>, satellite TV<sup>3</sup> and air conditioning. The hotel has a great gym<sup>4</sup>. There was 24-hour room service and the staff were very helpful with tourist information. The café bar was a very pleasant place to meet other guests, and we had a delicious breakfast there too.We recommend both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short stay.



### Circle the right answer.

- The bar was pleasant/delicious.
- 1 The staff/guests work in the hotel.
- 2 It was a lovely hotel so I recommended/didn't recommend it to my sister.
- 3 The dinner was delicious/helpful.
- 4 A lot of tourists/quests visit our city.
- 5 Internet access and satellite TV are room service/facilities.
- 6 You can get drinks from the gym/minibar.

#### Complete the questions.

	What was the last hotel you stayed _in?	
I	How long did you there?	
2	Were the helpful?	
3	Did the room have good, e.g. internet access?	
1	Did it have a with drinks in your room?	
5	Did it haveTV?	
5	Did it have air and central?	
7	Did you talk to otherin the hotel?	And the state of t
3	Would you this hotel to other people?	

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.



#### Glossary

stay in a hotel live for a short time in a hotel (also a stay)

facilities things you can use, e.g. internet, gym air conditioning makes a room colder, central heating makes a room warmer

room service when a waiter brings food or drinks to your room

staff u people who work for a company helpful wanting to help

tourist someone who goes to a place on holiday guest a person staying in a hotel or your home delicious very good to eat

AROUT YOU

recommend say something is good



### B Booking a room 60









double room single room

twin room

shower

Katja (K) is talking to the receptionist (R) at a hotel.

- Hotel Metropole. Can I help you? R
- Oh, good morning. I'd like to book a double room with a K bathroom for May 24th, please.
- That's fine. All our bedrooms are en suite. R
- Right, and how much is that? K
- It's £60 a night, and breakfast is included in the price. R
- That's great. And has the hotel got parking? K
- R No. I'm afraid not.
- Oh, what a shame. OK, well, never mind. I'll take it. K
- Right, can I have your credit card details please?... R

#### 4 Answer the questions about the dialogue.

- Is Katja staying for two nights? No
- 1 Does she want a room for one person?
- 2 Has the room got a bathroom?
- 3 Is she happy about the price?
- 4 Will she pay more for breakfast?
- 5 How much is the room for one night?\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Can she leave her car at the hotel?
- 7 Is she angry about the parking?
- 8 Do they want her credit card number?

A Regent Hotel, can I help you?

#### Complete the dialogue.

	please.		
Α	Is that a (3)	room or a <b>(4)</b>	?
В	A double, please.		

A All our rooms are (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_, with bath or (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_

B That's (7) \_\_\_\_\_. How much is the room?

A It's €45 (8) \_\_\_\_\_ night, and breakfast is (9) \_\_\_\_\_.

B OK, and does the room have (10) \_\_\_\_\_conditioning?

A I'm (11) \_\_\_\_\_\_not.

B That's a (12) \_\_\_\_\_. Oh, well, never (13) \_\_\_\_\_. I'll take the room.

B Oh, hello, i'd (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a room for two next Tuesday,

A (14) \_\_\_\_\_\_, please?

#### Glossary

a room for you for a future date en suite a bedroom with a bathroom right OK €60 a night = €60 for one night included If breakfast is included. you don't pay any more for it. (that's) great fine; very good parking aplaceto leave a car I'm afraid not = I'm sorry, but no. never mind = it isn'timportant details information, e.g. the card number

book a room ask a hotel to keep

#### spotlight

That's a shame/ What a shame

You say this when someone tells you something which is a little sad, or you don't want to hear. I can't come this evening.

~ Oh, what a shame.

~ Oh, that's a shame.



## 56 I can communicate in an airport

### A Check-in 6

When passengers1 get to the airport, they put their luggage2 (sultcase3 and bag4) on a trolley5 and go to the check-in desk6. There, they show their tlcket<sup>7</sup> and passport, and put their luggage on the scales8. They can take hand luggage<sup>9</sup> on the plane with them. The person at the checkin desk often asks, 'Do you want a window seat10 or an aisle seat<sup>11</sup>?' They give the passenger a boarding card12, and they often say, 'Have a good flight.'



### Complete the words.

p	<u>a</u>	<u>5</u>	<u>5</u>	eng	91

Time now: 10.30

Test yourself. Cover the text. Name the things in the picture.

# Departures 60

Departures from Bristol Airport

Flight	Destination	Departure time	Notes
EZY 6025	Barcelona	10.25	departed
KL 1048	Amsterdam	10.35	flight closed
BA 4021	Munich	10.50	last call gate 5
FR 483	Dublin	11.00	boarding gate 7
BA 7643	Milan	11.05	delayed until 11.50
BA 4084	Paris CDG	11.35	check-in desk 22

- B Look at the departures board. It is now 10.30. Circle the correct answer.
  - ► Can you get on the Dublin flight now? (Yes/No
  - 1 Can you get on the Barcelona plane now? Yes/No
  - 2 Can you get on the Amsterdam plane now? Yes/No
  - 3 Can you get on the Munich plane now? Yes/No
  - 4 Is the Milan flight on time? Yes/No
  - 5 How many flights are boarding now? 1/2/3/4/5

#### Glossary

departed If a plane has departed, it has left the airport. (The noun is departure.)

flight closed = You can't get on the plane now.

last call = You must get on the plane now.

gate the place where you leave the airport building to get on the plane

boarding If the flight is boarding, people are getting on the plane.

delayed If a plane is delayed, it is going to be late. (It isn't on time.)



#### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com 4 Complete the airport announcements. \_\_\_\_ KL 1048 to Amsterdam is now closed. 1 This is the last \_\_\_\_\_\_ for passengers on flight BA4021 to Munich. Please go to \_\_\_\_\_ 5 immediately. 2 Passengers on flight FR 483 to Dublin: this flight is now \_\_\_\_\_\_ at gate 7. 4 Would passengers on flight BA 4084 to Paris please go to \_\_\_\_\_ desk 22. Flight BA 7643 to Milan will now \_\_\_\_\_ at 11.50. C Take-off and landing •• You **get on** the plane and The plane takes off. The plane lands and fasten your seat belt. you get off. You go through customs You go through passport control. You collect your luggage Someone checks your passport. from baggage reclaim. and leave the terminal. Put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes. a collect your luggage d the plane lands g get on the plane b go through customs e get off the plane h the plane takes off c fasten your seat belt f leave the terminal someone checks your passport 6 Complete the phrases. You leave the terminal The plane takes off and \_\_\_\_\_\_ 2 You fasten \_\_\_\_\_ You go through \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_ 4 You collect your \_\_\_\_\_ from \_\_\_\_\_ Passengers \_\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ the plane. ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

What hand luggage do you usually take on the plane?

Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember the phrases for each picture?

What do you do in the airport when your flight is delayed?

Do you like to sit in a window seat or an aisle seat?

1 How often do you travel by plane? . . \_\_\_



## 57 I can describe a beach holiday 6

We spent ten days in Hyères, a holiday **resort** in the south of France. We **flew** to Nice, then **got** a **bus** to Hyères. We **rented an apartment** near the **beach**<sup>1</sup>, and that's where we spent most mornings. I was happy to **lie** on the beach and **sunbathe** in my new **swimming costume**<sup>2</sup>; my husband preferred a T-shirt and long **shorts**<sup>3</sup>. He went swimming a lot—the **sea**<sup>4</sup> was lovely and warm. We had lunch in the apartment, then **relaxed** for **an hour or so**. In the late afternoon we usually **went for a walk**, and in the evening, had dinner in one of the restaurants near the beach. It was a **perfect** holiday.



#### Glossary

resort a place where a lot of people go for a holiday fly PT flew travel by plane get a bus travel by bus (also take a bus)

**rent an apartment, house, etc.** pay to use an apartment, house, etc.

apartment rooms you rent for a
holiday (also flat)

lie PT lay the woman in the picture is lying on the beach sunbathe take off your clothes and sit or lie in the sun relax do nothing and enjoy yourself

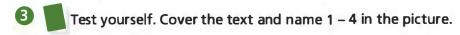
an hour or so about an hour go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself perfect If something is perfect it can't be better.

1	Write	the	words	for	the	meanings.
			110.03			11100111111931

- ► A place where people go for a holiday. resort
- 1 Pay money to use a house for a period of time. r\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Women often wear one on the beach. s. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Men often wear these on the beach. s\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Rooms you rent for a holiday. a\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You can swim in this, and it's not a pool. s.
- 6 Very good; cannot be better. p\_\_\_\_
- 7 Do nothing and enjoy yourself. r\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Lie in the sun in a swimming costume or shorts. s\_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I went for a swim in the sea \_\_\_\_.
- 1 We sat on the \_\_\_\_\_ and looked at the sea.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ a bus to the mountains, and then \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk.
- 3 We \_\_\_\_\_\_ near Malaga.
- 4 It takes an hour or \_\_\_\_\_\_ to get to the beach.
- 5 We spent two days near Paris, then \_\_\_\_\_ from Charles de Gaulle Airport to New York.
- 6 I want to relax, so I'm just going to \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the beach and sunbathe.





## 58 I can describe a sightseeing holiday 6

Word	Example	Meaning
map	You can get a <b>map</b> in Tourist Information.	
guide guidebook	Our guide was very good. A guidebook is useful.	A person (guide) or book (guidebook) which describes a place for tourists.
typical	Look – a <b>typical</b> tourist, with a guidebook and camera.	A typical thing is a good example of its kind.
go sightseeing	We went sightseeing yesterday.	go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places
art gallery	I'm going to an art gallery this afternoon.	a place where people can look at paintings
visit museums or art galleries etc.	You <b>should visit</b> the British <b>Museum</b> in London.	visit go and see a place for a short time museum a place where you look at old or interesting things
look round	I want to <b>look round</b> the town.	walk round a place to see it
go on a (guided) tour	We went on a tour of the old town.	a short visit to a town, museum, etc. sometimes with a guide
get lost	I <b>got lost</b> so I asked for help.	If you get lost or are lost, you don't know where you are.
take photos	I took lots of photos.	

#### Circle the correct word.

- ▶ art museum(gallery) 4 make/take photos
- 1 go/do sightseeing
- 5 guide/guided tour
- 2 quide map/book 6 go on/make a tour
- 3 visit/go a museum

#### spotlight

#### should + verb

You should go to that museum means 'it is a good idea to go to that museum'. Should is the same in all forms.

If you go to Peru, you should visit Machu Pichu. It's fantastic.

### Complete the sentences.

- We went on a guided tour.
- 1 She \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of photos of some \_\_\_\_\_ old French villages.
- 2 You \_\_\_\_\_ go and look \_\_\_\_\_ the museums they're very interesting.
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_lost because I didn't have a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 We went to the \_\_\_\_\_ gallery to see those Picasso paintings.
- 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ on a tour of the centre and the \_\_\_\_\_ was interesting and funny.

#### **B** ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

When you visit new towns/cities, do you:

- 1 go sightseeing?
- 2 take a map with you?
- 3 buy a guidebook?
- 4 take photos?
- 5 visit museums and art galleries?
- 6 look round the shops?
- 7 often get lost?
- 8 go on a guided tour?



## 59 I can use the bank and post office

### A At the bank 60

Questions	Answers	Meaning
Can I use this card in this cash machine?	Ifit's a Visa card, yes.	also ATM
Where can I <b>change</b> dollars <b>into</b> euros?	In a bank, a hotel, or a bureau de change.	change (money) e.g. give someone dollars and get the same in euros
Is there a <b>bureau de</b> <b>change</b> near here?	Yes, there's one at the station.	an office where you can change money
Which <b>currency</b> do I need for Argentina?	You need pesos.	the money that a country uses, e.g. dollars in the USA
I've got Japanese yen.  What's the exchange rate for the euro?	It's 142 yen <b>to</b> the euro.	exchange rate how much money from one country you can buy with money from another country, e.g. US\$10 = €12.40
Where do I <b>sign</b> this?	Just here.	
What commission do you charge?	We charge 1%. (% = <b>per cent</b> )	commission the money you pay a bank, e.g. for changing currency charge ask someone to pay a certain price for something

1	Match	1 – 5 wit	ha-fto	make	questions.
---	-------	-----------	--------	------	------------

•	Where can I change my eurosf	a	for Brazil?
1	What currency do I need	b	for the peso?
2	What commission	С	do you charge?
3	Can I use this card	d	in this cash machine?
4	What's the exchange rate	е	in the station?
5	Is there a bureau de change	f	into dollars? ✓

#### Complete the sentences.

<b></b>	The banks <u>charge</u> 1.5% commission.	4	What's the exchange?
1	the cheque at the bottom.	5	You pay one cent to the bank.
2	dollars into euros.	6	You get money from a
3	The in China is the yuan.		machine.
ΑI	BOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write y	our a	nswers or ask another student.

AE	BOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
1	What's the currency in your country?
2	Do you know the exchange rate for the US dollar?
3	When you travel, where do you get or change money?
4	Do you use a cash machine to get your own currency?
5	Where do you find cash machines in your country?



## B At the post office 6

#### 1 You want to send a letter to a friend.



You write the name. address and postcode on the envelope.



You put a stamp on it.



You **post** it in the **letter box** or **postbox**.



The **postman** or **postwoman delivers** it in the next day or two.

#### 2 You want to send a parcel to Germany.



You take it to the **post** office.



'How much is this parcel to Germany, please?'



'Put it on the scales. please. 350 gms – that's £3.43.'



'That's fine. And can I have two stamps for postcards to Germany?'

	1	Δηςινιοι	the c	uestions.	Choose	answers	from	the	hov
4		Allawei	the c	questions.	CHOOSE	aliswei 2	HOIII	uie	DUX.

- ► Where do you post letters? in a postbox, in a letter box
- 1 What do postmen do?
- 2 What do you write on an envelope?
- 3 Where do you take a parcel?
- 4 Where do you put the parcel?
- 5 What do you put on an envelope/parcel?
- 6 Who takes parcels to people's homes?
- 7 Which three things can you send?

to the post office
a postcard
in a postbox 
deliver letters
a stamp
the postman
a letter
the name, address
and postcode
in a letter box 
a parcel
on the scales

### 5 Use the words to make questions. You need to add one more word.

- ▶ please / Japan / to / parcel / is / how / this /? How (much is this parcel to Japan, please?
- 1 box / is / near / there / here / a / ? \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 scales / can / it / you / the / on / ?
- 3 Argentina / I / for / three / can / stamps / ? \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 letter / where / post / this / I / ?
- 5 Russia / much / is / postcard / how / a / ?
- 6 post/buy/envelopes/you/can/the/at/?\_\_\_\_\_

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the sentences?



# Review: Holidays

### Unit 54

	ead the text on the nd words in the tex	_	atch the meanings.		you might n	eed to		,
	of another country	which is	not your country foreign		certain thing			
1	plan or organize						ook a flight	
2			+ bandana		and your acc			
3			short time			-	ur passport to	
4	go to another count					-	at country to	
5		-	e to work		get a visa, a	nd you	might also	
6			ning in advance		need foreigr			
7			fore you travel				e a car before	
8	a journey by plane	_	•		they go, and		_	
9					airport. And your suitcase		you pack t forget your	
					passport!		<i>J</i> ,	
U	nit 55							
1	Match 1 – 10 with	a – k.						
	▶ double e	6	I'm afraid	а	conditioning	g	TV	
	1 central	7	never	b	a shame	h	heating	
	2 air	8	book	С	in the price	i	mind	
	3 internet	9	what	d	access	j	service	
	4 room	10	included	е	room ✓	k	a room	
	5 satellite			f	not			

### 2 Complete the conversation.

•	A Can you <u>recommend</u> a good hotel in New York?
	Yes, we (1) in a great hotel last year – the Excelsior.
Α	Did all the rooms have a bathroom?
В	Yes, they were all (2)
Α	And did it have a minibar, and TV and everything?
В	Yes, the room (3) were great. And the hotel (4) were really
	friendly and helpful too.
Α	How about the food?
В	It was really good – in fact, it was (5) And the hotel wasn't too expensive – it
	was about \$50 a (6)
Α	That's good, isn't it? And has it got (7)?
В	I don't know. We didn't have a car.
Δ	It sounds perfect 1 think I'll (8)



### Unit 56

1 Match 1 – 9 with a –	1	Match	1	-9	with	a –	j.
------------------------	---	-------	---	----	------	-----	----

<b></b>	departuresj	5	seat	a	luggage	f	card
1	check-in	6	hand	b	belt	g	call
2	gate	7	aisle	C	closed	h	control
3	last	8	boarding	d	seat	i	desk
4	passport	9	flight	e	seven	j	board 🗸

### 2 Complete the sentences with one word. Use the Past Simple in questions 6-10.

1	I couldn't carry my suitcases, so I put them on a
2	I had to show my passport and at the check-in desk.
3	I put my luggage on the
4	The check-in person said, 'Have a good'.
5	I was an hour late because my flight was
6	When I on the plane, somebody was in my seat.
7	I my seat belt and started reading the in-flight magazine.
8	It was sunny when we took off, but it was raining when the plane at Manchester Airport.
9	After we got off the plane, we went and our luggage.
n	When I through customs, there was nobody there

### Unit 57

One word is missing in each line of the text. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

sunbathe	ed went	get	perfect	holiday 🗸	or	flew	rented	resort
year. We to we had to a	ovely in France Marseille Airp bus to Cassis noliday by the	ort and , which		1 2 3	holiday	midsamatisastumid (h-)d	200000000000000000000000000000000000000	
We an apar	tment in the c	entre of		4				
the town. E	very morning	we for a		5				
walk round	the town, the	n we on		6	-			
the beach f	or an hour so.	The		7				
weather wa	s for the who	le week.		8			man na na	



## Unit 58

Orrect	One	mictake	in paci	n sentence.
COLLECT	ULIC	IIII3 Lake	III Caci	1 3CHECHCE

<b></b>	She went on a guiding tour of the city. She went on a guided tour of the city.
1	We're going in a tour of the city this afternoon.
2	Did you go seeing in Paris?
3	We always go lost in a new place.
4	She made a lot of photos on her holiday.
5	Did you visit at the museum?
6	There were lots of typic tourists.
7	There's a good exhibition at the art museum.
8	Have you got a guided book about London, please?

### Unit 59

#### 1 Write words beginning with P and C.

•	post	a letter = put a letter in a letter box
1	<b>p</b>	= where you buy stamps
2	p	= the numbers and letters at the end of an address
3	p	= the person who delivers the letters
4	p	= letter box
5	p	= you write these on holiday
6	p	= you a stamp on an envelope
7	p	= %
8	<b>p</b>	= you take this to the post office because it's too big for a letter box
9	C	= the money of a country, e.g. dollars, euros
10	C	= a place inside or outside a bank where you can get
	money with a card	
11	C	= e.g. give someone dollars and they give you the same amount in pesos
12	C	= you have to pay this to a bank for changing money
13	C	= a bank can1% for changing money

#### 2 Complete the questions.

	Can I have five Stamps	for postcards to Russia, please?
1	How much is it to	a 1 kg parcel to Italy?
2	Did you put a stamp on the	?
3	How many letters did the postman	today?
4	What's the	for the Brazilian Real?
5	Can I change dollars	pounds sterling here?
6	is there a de	in the centre?



## 60 I can meet and greet people

### A Introductions 60



Sam and Mary meet for the first time ...

Sam, this is Mary. IANB

MARY Hello.

Hi. Nice to meet you. SAM



two hours later ...

Well, goodbye, Sam. Good to meet you. MARY Yes. I hope to see you again. Bye!

#### Glossary

bye a short form of goodbye shake hands



#### spotlight Introductions

- Hi is informal and common with young people.
- How do you do? is also possible, but now very formal.
- We often use Nice to meet you or Good to meet you when we meet people for the first time, and when we say goodbye the first time after we meet them.

Make sentences from the work	ds.
------------------------------	-----

<b>&gt;</b>	you/do/how/do/? How do you do?
1	meet / nice / hello / you / to
2	this / Max / Hanna / is
3	again / hope / you / bye / to / l / see
4	you / goodbye / to / nice / meet

#### Complete the dialogues.

1	Lucia	Emma, ▶ this is Alex.
	Alex	Hi, Emma to meet you.
	Emma	
2	Alex	Goodbye, Emma. I to see you
	Emma	Yes
3	Chris	Jan, this Dan.
	Jan	, Dan. Good
	Dan	, Jan.
4	Dan	Well, again.
	Jan	



## B Meeting a friend 🕟

Tess (T) meets her friend Matt (M) in a bar.

- T Hi, Matt. How are you?
- M Fine, thanks. And you?
- T Yes, not bad.
- M Good. And how's Sarah?
- T Yeah, she's very well.

An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

- M OK. I've got to go now. See you later.
- T Sure. About 7.00?
- M Yeah, that's fine.
- T Good. See you then.
- M OK. Bye.
- 3 Complete the phrases.
  - ► How are you?
  - 1 S\_\_ you \_g\_\_\_.
  - 2 i m\_st g\_ n\_w.
  - 3 S\_\_ you l\_t\_\_.
  - 4 H\_'s v\_\_y w\_\_I.

#### Glossary

how are you? You say this to a friend when you meet. (also how are things?)

fine or very well or not bad are common replies to 'How are you?' NOT very fine

have got to do = have to do or must do (have got to is more informal)

#### spotlight See you...

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.

See you next Saturday.

See you then = at the time we agreed

See you later = the same day

See you soon = another day, e.g. next week

See you again = another time, but I'm not sure when

- 5 S\_\_ you s\_\_\_.
- 6 H\_w\_r\_th\_\_\_s?
- 7 S\_\_ you \_ n S\_\_ d\_ y.
- 8 |'v\_ g\_t t\_ go n\_w.
- 9 Th\_\_'s f\_n\_.
- 4 Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.
  - 1 Jim Hi, How ▶ <u>are</u> <u>you</u> ?
    Sam I'm very ... And you?
    Jim Yeah, not ... And ... your wife?
    Sam She's ... ...
- - Sam OK. See you \_\_\_\_\_.

    Jim Sure. What time? 6.30?
  - Sam Yeah, \_\_\_\_\_fine . See you \_\_\_\_\_

## C Saying hello and goodbye 👀

	hello			goodbye		
	anytime (24 hours)	before lunch	after lunch	after 6 p.m.	anytime	at the end of the evening
	hello	good morning	good afternoon	good evening	goodbye	goodnight
more informal	hi or hi there	morning	afternoon	evening	bye or bye bye	night

## 5

#### Test yourself. Cover the table above and answer the questions.

What do you say when you:		more informal
▶ see someone anytime?	Hello	Hi
1 see someone before lunch?		
2 see someone after 6.00 p.m.?		
3 see someone after lunch?		
4 say goodbye at 11.00 p.m.?		



# 61 I can use special greetings 60

Say this to someone when:	Expression	Response
you say goodbye	have a nice day/evening have a good/lovely weekend	thanks, you too andyou
someone is going to bed	goodnight, sleep well	-
it's Christmas/new year/ <b>Easter</b> (Baster is a Christian festival in March or April.)	happy/merry Christmas happy New Year happy Easter	happy Christmas, etc the same to you
it's their birthday	happy birthday	
they've done something well or passed an exam	well done congratulations	thank you thanks
they are getting married or having a baby	congratulations NOT well done	
they are going to do something difficult, e.g. before an exam	good luck not good lucky	
they are going away, e.g. on holiday	have a good/nice holiday/time have a good journey	
someone has arrived recently, or returned home after a long time	welcome to London welcome home/back	
	cheers	cheers

0	Match 1 – 9 with a – j.			
	•	Merry Christmas!	а	
	1	I'm going to New York	b	
	2	Cheers!	C	
	3	Goodnight	d	
	4	Hello! I'm back!	е	
	5	I'm 21 today	f	
	6	It's my driving test today	g	
	7	Bob and I are getting married	h	

8 I've passed my driving test. \_\_\_

9 Have a nice evening. \_\_\_\_

- a You too.
- b The same to you. 🗸
- c Good luck.
- d Welcome home!
- e Well done!
- f Congratulations.
- g Sleep well.
- h Cheers!
- i Have a good journey.
- j Happy birthday!

#### spotlight cheers

**Cheers** has two other meanings in informal, spoken English.

- 1 Thank you

  Here's the money you lent

  me. ~ Oh, cheers.
- 2 Goodbye See you later. ~ Cheers.

6	_				
(2)	Com	plete	the	phras	es.

1	Have a nice/good do	ly	/e	/w	/h	
	j/t	-				
2	Нарру С	/E	/N	Y	/b	
3	Goodn	/Good I	1/\\/all	Н	IAM	home

Test yourself. Look at column one in the table and cover columns two and three. Can you remember the phrases and responses?



## 62 I can ask for information

## A About people 60

Who do you live with, Tracey?

And what's your brother like?

And your boyfriend - what does he do?

How long have you known him?

I understand you're learning Spanish.

How often are the classes?

And why Spanish?

Whose idea was it to live in Spain?

What's wrong with England?

How about you? What do you think?

What kind of work can you do in Spain?

- ~ My parents, and my younger brother.
- ~ He's stupid and a bit fat.
- ~ He works for an airline company.
- ~ About two years.
- ~ Yes, that's right.
- ~ Twice a week.
- ~ Because we want to live in Spain.
- ~ My boyfriend's.
- ~ He doesn't like the weather.
- ~ Yeah. I think it's a good idea.
- ~ My boyfriend can still work for his company, and I can get a job in a bar.

#### Glossary

What's wrong with England? = What's the problem with England?

#### spotlight w

whose and belong to

Whose money is that? ~ It's mine. (It's my money.)
Who does this bag belong to? ~ It's Ben's. (The bag belongs to Ben.) NOT Whose does this bag belong to?

0	Make	questions	from	the	words.
---	------	-----------	------	-----	--------

	for/do/work/who/you/? Who do you work for?
1	you / often / there / go / how / do / ?
2	like / what / music / do / kind of / you / ?
3	he / does / what / do ?
4	have / lived / how long / there / you / ?
5	wrong / Peter / with / what's / ?
6	this / to / belong / does / who / ?
7	his / like / what's / flat / ?
8	like / you / why / her / don't / ?

# 2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

	Because she's horrible to me
a	Ten years
b	He's very angry with me
C	It's small but very nice
d	Twice a year
e	It's mine
f	He's a doctor
g	Rock and pop

### 3 Complete the dialogues.

C	Complete the dialogues.				
•	What kind of animal is it?				
	~ I think it's a horse.				
1	How do you go? ~ Every week.				
2	jacket is this? ~ It's mine.				
3	's she like? ~ She's very nice.				
4	l don't speak Germanabout				
	you? ~ Yes, I speak a bit of German.				
5	How have you worked there?				
	~ Six months				





#### 4 Circle the correct answers.

- ► How far long is it to the museum?
- 1 Which/what is your address?
- 2 How long/long time do you need?
- 3 What hour/time does it open?
- 4 How much/many places did you visit?
- 5 Where's the nearest/next café?
- 6 Is the museum worth to see/seeing?

#### spotlight which or what?

Use **which** when there is a small number of possibilities. *We have a double room or a twin. Which do you prefer?* In other situations, use **what**.

**What**'s the address of the hotel? (NOT Which is the address?)

### Complete the questions.

	When does the post office open?
1	How is it to the station?
2	How places did you go to?
3	There are two do you want?
4	's the phone number of the bank?
5	It opens at 8.00, but when does it?
6	Is it going to see Notre Dame?
7	Where's the underground station?
8	There's a lot to see. What do you?

#### 6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Answer the questions or ask another student.

1	Where do you live?
2	How long have you lived there?
3	Which places are worth visiting?
4	How far are they from your home?

5 Can you recommend any restaurants? ....



## 63 I can ask for things

## A Requests and responses 60

Requests (in the classroom)	Responses	
Can you bring the dictionaries here, please?	Sure.	
Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?	OK. Yeah, sure.	
Yuri, could you possibly take these books to the staffroom?	Yeah, no problem. Yes, of course.	
Elena, can you <b>change places</b> with Gabi?		
Could you <b>lend</b> me a pen, Boris?	X (No), I'm afraid	
Dmitri, could you possibly wait here a few minutes?	I can't,	

### spotlight Being polite

Can and could have the same meaning in the table. Could you possibly ...? is more polite, for a bigger request.

**Please** is very common, and makes a request more polite.

**I'm afraid** ... is used to say politely that you are sorry about something.

#### Glossary





bring

take

finish something do or complete the last part of something

**change places** e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's place and Gabi sits in Elena's place

**lend** give something to someone to use for a short time

wait stay in one place for a short time until something happens

I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, but I can't nor I'm
afraid but I can't

1	Complete the	dialogues	with one	word in	each space.
---	--------------	-----------	----------	---------	-------------

	Can you	clean board?		
1	Can	lend a pen? ~ `	res,cou	rse.
2	Could you	the books here,	? ~ Yes,	problem.
3	Could you	wait here a few	? ~ I'm	I can't.
4	Lia, can you	places	Maris?	~ Yeah .

# 2 Use the words to write requests and responses. Use can, could and could ... possibly and different responses.

	take/books/away
	A Could you take these books away, please?
	B Yes, sure.
1	finish / exercise / homework
	Α
	В
2	Luca / change places / Maria
	Α
	В

3	bring / notebook / tomorrow
	Α
	В
4	lend / pencil
	Λ

) (	wait / classroom a few minutes
	۸



## B Asking for and giving permission 6 &

Do	you	Id you lend me ur dictionary?  Sure.  t all right if I in that chair?  t, that's fine.  u mind if I look our answers?		Could I borrow your pen?  I'm afraid I need it.  Is it OK if I close the door?  Yes, sure.  Can I open the window
go a fin so all i Do	oss ahe we me igh you he	ead or that's fine You say go ahead or that's when you give someone permission to do ething.  Int = OK  I mind if? = Is it a problem for you if?  answer 'No, go ahead' means 'It's not a lem'.)	If you borrow a p their pen, then gir If you lend some your pen to use for	one a pen. you give them
3	1 2 3 4 5 6 7	rite new sentences. Change the bold words. T  Can we sit down?		
4	1 2 3	You want to go at one o'clock today.  You want to borrow a rubber.  You want to go to the toilet.  You want to sit in a different seat.	the window?	
5	1		permission from	nav.



## 64 I can invite people 6

#### Inviting

Would you like to ... Do you want to ...

- ... go out for a meal/a drink?
- ... come round for a coffee?
- ... come to a party?





#### Saying yes

Yes, great! Yes. I'd love to! That sounds lovely/fun/good. That would be lovely/nice.



#### Saying no

I'm afraid I can't. I'm sorry, but I'm busy. I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.



spotlight Would you like to... or Do you want to...?

Would you like to ...? is a little more polite than Do you want to ...?

- 1 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.
  - ► How/tomorrow? about
  - 1 Would you to come round later?
  - 2 Yes, I'd love.
  - 3 Do you want to out for dinner?
  - 4 That lovely.
  - 5 I'm afraid can't.
  - 6 That be nice.
  - 7 Do you want come to a party?
  - 8 I'm, but I'm busy tonight.
- Complete the questions and answers.
  - Invite someone for a drink in a bar. Say yes.
  - 1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant. Say yes.
  - 2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee. Say no politely.
  - 3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow. Say yes.
  - 4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café. Say no politely.

#### Glossary

invite ask someone to come to a party, your house, etc.

go out for a meal or a drink means go to a restaurant or a café/bar' come round come to my home party a time when friends meet to eat, drink, dance, play games, etc. great very good syn wonderful I'd love to = I want to do it very much (I'd = I would)

That sounds lovely. = I think that's a lovely idea.

That would be lovely. = I would like

busy If you are busy, you have a lot of things to do.

I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, (but) I can't Not I'm afraid but I can't

A Do you want to go out for a drink ? B That would be lovely A Would \_\_\_\_\_? B Yes, g A Do \_\_\_\_\_? A Would \_\_\_\_\_? B Yes, that s. B I'd \_\_\_\_\_, but

# 65 I can make suggestions 6

Askf	or a suggestion	What shall where shall		s weekend?
			<u> </u>	
Make	e a suggestion	Shall we go to the b Maybe we could go		What about going to an exhibition? Let's go out for a drink.
	that's a) good/gre , let's do that.	at idea!	I'm not sure Well, I'd pre	nake another suggestion e (about that). fer to stay at home. erhaps we could go to the mountains
Di	ut the dialogue in	ordor	Glossar	у
ľa Th	d prefer to get them ne weather's nice, so es, good idea.	at the station.	think ab	on an idea that someone gives you to cout erhaps possibly out? = What do you think about?
	es, good idea. /hat shall we do this	weekend?	1 spotligh	t Saying no
	laybe we could take			ry polite to say <b>no</b> to a suggestion in
	ne. Shall we get the hat about going to		English. I	t's more polite to say, <i>I'm not sure</i> , or other suggestion.
	orrect the mistak		Shall we g	go out? ~ Well, I'd prefer to stay in.
			We could have	a party this weekend.
1				
2		_		i sammananda u indunandadang primamanandan
3				
4		ain		
5	Yes, that a good is	dea		
W	/rite in a word wh	nere there is a /.		
1	B What / going /	the theatre?		evening?
2	A I'm / sure / tha			нан доположения ( Миниципинания иний и начествення в наче
2				the processor of the superior
				у
2				
3				
	-	nd/		national to an initial accommodate an
	A TEALLY SA OOG	IU /		



## 66 I can offer, accept, and refuse

## A Offering food, drink or help 60



Offering food/drink Would you like a biscuit? Do you want something to eat?

Accept = say yes

**Refuse** = say no

Yes, please. No, thanks.

Thanks.

Thanks. Could I have ...?



Offering help Can I give you a hand? Do you need some help?

Accept

Refuse

Yes, please. Thanks a lot. No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.

Thank you (very much).

#### spotlight Saying thank you

Thanks or Thanks a lot are the most common ways of thanking someone in spoken English. Thank you (very much) is more formal.

0	Correct one	letter of	one word	in each	sentence.

- Could you like something to drink? Would
- 1 Can I give you a band? \_\_\_\_\_

- ~ No, don't lorry.
- 2 Do you want something to ear? \_\_\_\_\_ ~ Thanks. Would I have a biscuit? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 So you need some help? \_\_\_\_\_ ~ No, I'm mine, thanks. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Would you bike a drink? \_\_\_\_\_ ~ Thinks. Could I have a coffee? \_\_\_\_\_

### One word or contraction is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

- No. /worry. don't
- 1 Can I give you hand? 4 Thanks lot.
- 3 Would you a drink?
- 2 Thank you much. 5 No, fine, thanks.

### Complete the questions and answers.

- Offer someone food.
- 1 Offer someone a drink.

Accept, and ask for some water.

- 2 Offer someone help. Say no politely.
- 3 Offer someone food.

Accept, and ask for an apple.

4 Offer someone help.

Say no.

- Do you want something to eat?
- A Would \_\_\_\_\_\_ a drink?
- B Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ .... water?
- A Do help?
- B No. \_\_\_\_\_, thanks.
- B Yes. an apple?



## B Offering to do something 60



Would you like me to make the dinner? ~ That's very kind of you.



Shall I carry your bag? ~ OK. Thanks.



Do you want me to answer that? ~ Yes, please.



Let me pay for the drinks. ~ That's very kind of you.

#### spotlight let me + verb

We use **let me** + verb when we really want to do something for someone. **Let me** pay for lunch. **Let me** get the train tickets. **Let me give you a lift** to the station. = Let me take you in my car.

Match 1 – 6 with a	C	1.
--------------------	---	----

- ► I'm really hungry. \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 I haven't got much money. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Are the dishes dirty? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I have to go to the airport. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 This suitcase is really heavy. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Is that someone at the door? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I don't feel very well. \_\_\_\_\_

- a Let me carry it for you.
- b Do you want me to ring the doctor?
- c Shall I make you a sandwich? ✓
- d That's OK. Let me pay for the meal.
- e Yes. Would you like me to wash up?
- f Let me give you a lift.
- g Yes. Shall I see who it is?

#### Circle the correct word.

- ► Shal(Let) ne answer the door.
- 1 That's very kind for/of you.
- 2 Let/Let's me get the shopping.
- 3 Let/Shall I answer the phone?
- 4 Would/Do you like me to help?
- 5 Shall I/I'll carry that for you?
- 6 Shall I give/take you a lift to work?
  - 7 Let me/I do the washing-up.
  - 8 Do you like/want me to make the breakfast?

#### 6 Complete the conversations. Write one word or contraction (e.g. it's, I'll) in each gap.

		I'm just going to the post office.
В	3	Well, ▶ let me give a
Α	4	Oh, of
2 A	4	I'm really tired!
В	3	OK the dinner for you?
A	4	Yes, do the washing-up afterwards.
3 A	4	Jeannie, that shopping looks really heavy. Letit for you.
В	3	Oh,very much.
4 A	4	Oh, no! That's the phone again!
В	3	Do you me to answer it?



## 67 I can say sorry and respond 6

He pushed me but didn't apologize.



Really! That's very rude.

Saying sorry/apologizing	Responses
Sorry, I don't speak English very well. I'm sorry, I've broken a cup. I'm very sorry – I've lost your pen. I forgot to post your letter. I'm really sorry. Sorry I'm late. The traffic was terrible.	That's all right. I'll speak slowly. That's OK. Don't worry. It doesn't matter. I've got lots of pens. Never mind. I can post it later. Oh, don't worry about it.

#### Glossary

apologize to someone say sorry to someone rude orp polite

that's all right/don't worry/it doesn't matter/never mind These phrases all mean 'it's not important/it's OK'.

break PT broke
PP broken



lose PT/PP lost If you lose something, you can't find it. forget PT forgot PP forgotten OPP remember really sorry very sorry sorry I'm late NOT sorry for be late

#### spotlight (I'm) sorry

We can also use (I'm) sorry to ask someone to repeat something:

Sorry, could you repeat that, please? ~ Sure, no problem.

I'm sorry, what was your name again? ~ It's Marianne.

1	Correct	the	mistak	es.
---	---------	-----	--------	-----

- ► I'm sorry for be late. I'm sorry I'm late.
- 1 A I'm really sorry. I've lose your dictionary.
  - B Don't mind.
- 2 A I'm sorry, I've forget your book.
  - B No worry.
- 3 A I've break your cup I'm very sorry.
  - B It isn't matter.

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A I'm really sorry.
  - B \_\_\_\_\_ all right.
- 2 A Sorry I'm late.
  - B Don't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A I'm \_\_\_\_\_\_sorry.
  - B It doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A It's broken I'm very sorry.
  - B Oh, never \_\_\_\_\_.

- 5 A I'm sorry \_\_\_\_\_late. I missed the bus.
  - B That's OK.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_, could you repeat that, please?
  - B Sure, no \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 A Did he \_\_\_\_\_to you?
  - B Yes, he was very sorry.
- 8 A Did he say sorry?
  - B No, he's very

Test yourself. Cover the responses in the table and read the sentences on the left. Give correct responses.



# 68 I can express my opinion 66

I	think the school is excellent.	~ Yes. I agree.
H	e wants our opinion of the course.	~ Well. I don't think it's very good.
(I	thought it was a very funny book.	~ I agree with you. I loved it.)
(V	What do you think of London?	
1	like this dress. What do you think?	~ Personally. I don't like big cities.
-		~ I'm not sure. I think I prefer the other one.
	fax said the course was a waste f money.	~ I disagree. I thought it was great.
Pu	at the words in order, and add one	Glossary
	ore word to make a sentence.	think PT thought have an opinion about something
	very/I/good/it's I think it 's very good.	excellent very good
1	do/it/think/what/you/?	agree with someone have the same opinion as someone Not I'm agree OPP disagree
	-	opinion what you think about something
2	you / agree / I	I don't think it's very good NOT I think it's not very good
3	don't / very / 1 / good / it's	personally You can use personally to introduce your
4		opinion.  'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree
4	waste / it / money / a / was	politely.  prefer like one thing more than another
5	I / like / personally / didn't	a waste of money a bad way to use money (also a
6	one / I / other / prefer	waste of time)
Co	omplete the dialogues.	
	I like this. ~ Yes, I agree.	
1		of it? ~, I don't like it very much.
2		~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great.
3	What did you think her ide	ea? ~ Personally, I didn'tit was very good.
4	I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not	; it's a bit small. I think I her old one
	BOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree hat they think.	e? Write your opinion, or ask another student
1		
1		
2	Smoking's bad for you.	
	Smoking's bad for you	

## 69 I can use the phone

## A Phone vocabulary 60

Phone numbers	What's your phone number? ~ It's 245731. What's your mobile number? ~ It's 07700 900 796. What's the (area) code for Liverpool? ~ It's 0151.				
Phone verbs	You call or ring someone. PT rang	= <b>phone</b> someone			
	You text someone.	= send someone a text (message) e.g. CUL8R = see you later			
	You take a message.	= take information during a phone call and give it to someone else			
	You leave a message.	= give information to someone on the phone who then gives it to someone else			
Phone problems	The line is engaged/busy.	= the person you phoned is speaking on the phone already			
	The person is out/isn't in.	= not there			
	It's the wrong number.	= you make a mistake with the number			
	The battery's flat on the mobile.	= no electricity			

#### 1 Same or different? Write S or D.

<b>&gt;</b>	He phoned/rang his sister.	S
_1	What's your phone/mobile number?	
2	two six oh/zero four	
3	I left/took a message.	
4	I'm sorry, she isn't in/'s out.	
5	The line was busy/engaged.	
6	I texted him/sent him a text.	

#### spotlight Saying phone numbers

Say each number, e.g. 245731 is two four five seven three one.

Say **double** when two numbers are the same, e.g. 33 = **double** three.

For '()', say oh or zero, e.g. 602448 is six oh/zero two double four eight.

2	Complete t	the dialog	ues with	one word	in each space
	Complete	Life dialoc	INCO AAIRII	OHE WOLL	III Cacii spaci

1	Did you ▶ rtng Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but the line was e
	pher later.
2	What's your phone n? ~ It's 345489. And the c for Oxford is 01865
3	Did you c, so I left a
	m I r her mobile too, but I think the b was flat.
4	Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the wnumber.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1	What's your phone number,	area code and mobile number?	
---	---------------------------	------------------------------	--

- 2 Who do you ring most often?
- 3 How long do you spend on the phone every day?
- 4 Do you text a lot? If so, who to?



## B Phone conversations 6

Lau	ıra (L) is phoning Brenda (B).	Anton Jackson (AJ) is speaking to a receptionist (R)
B L B L B	Hello? Is that Brenda? Yes, speaking. Oh, hello. This is Laura, Laura Freebairn. Hi, Laura, how are you? I'm fine thanks. Is Jessica in, please? Yes, just a moment—I'll get her for you.	AJ It's Anton Jackson.  R Right, and do you want to leave a message?
4	Tick (✓) the correct response.	Glossary
	<ul> <li>► Can I speak to Sam, please?</li> <li>He's not in at the moment.</li> <li>✓ He's not in at the mo</li></ul>	Is that Brenda? NOT Are you  Brenda?  speaking = Yes, this is  Brenda.
	2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please?  Just a moment. It's Natasha.	NOT <del>I am/Here is Laura</del> just a moment wait a minute
	3 Hello, is that Galina? Oh, hello, this is Carla. Speaking.	get someone go and find someone and bring them to the phone
	4 Hello, this is Angela Brandt. Oh, hello, how are you? Who's co	points way to ask who are
5	Complete the conversations.	you?' ring/phone/call someone
	1 A Hello? B Hello. ► Is that Marisa? A Yes, (1)	back phone someone again
	B Oh, hello. (2) A Oh, hello, Dagmar. B Is Mikki (3),	
	A I'm sorry, he's out at (4) Can I take a message?	
	B Yes, please. Tell him I'll (5)	IIIII arter functi.
	B Oh, can I (6)	Tibor, please? moment. I'll (8) him for you.
	3 A Hello? B Oh, hello. (9) A Yes, (10) B Hello, Joanna, (11) A Hi, Rudy. How are you?	



## Review: Social English

#### Unit 60

1 Do these have the same meaning or a different meaning? Write S or D.

•	Afternoon!	Good afternoon!	S
1	Morningt	Good morning1	
2	Hi!	Byel	
3	I'm fine.	I'm very well.	
4	See you later.	See you tomorrow.	
5	Good to meet you.	Nice to meet you.	
6	How are you?	How are things?	
7	Hello.	Hi, there.	
8	Byel	Goodbye1	
9	How do you do?	How are you?	
10	I've got to go.	I must go.	

2 Find nine more phrases. You can go up  $\uparrow$ , down  $\downarrow$ , or across  $\rightarrow$ .

good	-> evening	¹ hope	bad	4 how	do
later	see	to	³ not	you	you
you	you	again	² how	are	do
<sup>9</sup> see	you	meet	soon	you	<sup>5</sup> shake
there	<sup>8</sup> hi	to	<sup>7</sup> nice	<sup>6</sup> see	hands

### Unit 61

What do yo	u say in t	hese situa	ations?
------------	------------	------------	---------

- ► It's Christmas Day. Happy Christmas!
- 1 It's your friend's birthday.
- 2 You say goodbye to a colleague on Friday afternoon. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Someone tells you they are getting married.
- 4 A friend is going to take an exam.
- 5 A friend has passed an exam.
- 6 Someone has returned home after a long time.
- 7 A friend is starting a holiday tomorrow.
- 8 It's the first day of January.



## Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com Unit 62 1 What is the correct question word or phrase for each answer? ► When/What time? ~ 7.30p.m. 5 — Next to the bank.

2

	When/What time?					~ Next to the bank.
						~ Three hours.
						~ I prefer this one.
4		~ Twice a week.	9		Comments Court - Comments	~ 1( 5 )01111.
2 C	ircle the correct form the	n write your ansv	vers.			
				ABOUT YO	U	
► (V	What's How's your English lik	e?				
1 1	've got one sister. What's/Ho	w about you?				
2 /	And what do/are you do?					Martin Control
3 A	And what does/is your best fr	riend do?				
4 H	How often/many do you stud	ly English every wee	k?			
5 H	How long/long time have you	studied English?				
6 V	What kind/kind of games do	you like?				
ماا	nit 63					
UI	111.03					
	omplete the sentences w	-	?			
1	Do mind if	go now	/?			
2						
3	F		1			
<b>4</b> 5						
6						
7						
8	Couldtake it		ase?			
9	Dina, could c	hange places with N	Mia?			
2 F	ind five more responses i	n the box to the r	eque	st. Write the	em below.	
		problem of	1	it need	sure 🗸	
	that's yes ✓ go	I'm course	fine			
C	ould I possibly borrow your o	ar tomorrow?				
_	Yes, sure.	-				
_						
					REVIEW:	SOCIAL ENGLISH 10



### Unit 64

#### Correct one mistake in each sentence.

	Do	you want to come at a party tonight? Do you want to come to a party tonight?
1	Α	Would you want to have lunch tomorrow?
	В	I'm afraid but I can't.
2	Α	Do you like to go skiing this weekend?
	В	Yes, that is fun!
3	Α	Would you like to go round here for a drink tonight?
	В	Yes, I love to, but I'm busy.
4	Α	Do you want come round for a meal at the weekend?
	В	I sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

### Unit 65

#### Complete the dialogue.

Α	Would you > like	to go out tomor	row?
В	Yes. Where (1)	we go?	
Α	Well, (2)	we (3)	go swimming.
В	Mmm. I'm not (4)	about that.	It's a bit cold for swimming.
Α	OK. What (5)	going to an exh	ibition?
Α	Yes, that's a good (6)	. (7)	's do that.

### Unit 66

### Change two words to make the pairs of sentences correct.

•	Yes, thanks.	No, please.	Yes, please. No, thanks.
1	Would you want a sandwich?	Do you like a drink?	
2	Do you need a help?	Do you want some hand?	
3	No, I'm worry, thanks.	No, don't fine.	
4	Thanks a very.	Thank you lot much.	
5	Shall me pay for the coffees.	Let I do that for you?	
6	That's much kind of you.	Thank you very very.	



### Unit 67

Read the situations,	than write the	dialogues	Hea as many	different phrases	c possible
read the situations,	then write the	ulalogues.	Use as illally	different pinases a	is hossinie.

	Someone lends you a pen and you lose it.	A B	I'm sorry, I've lost your pen. That's OK, don't worry.
1	Someone asked you to post a letter yesterday, but you forgot.	A B	
2	You arrange to meet someone, but you are late.	A B	
3	You make coffee for someone, but break one of their cups.	A B	
4	Someone says something to you,	Α	

#### Unit 68

but you can't hear it.

#### Make words from the letters. Use the definitions to help you.

	To have an idea about something	hiktn think
1	What you think about something	noipoin
2	Very good	telxecnle
3	Have a different opinion from someone	gredeasi
4	Like one thing more than another	rerepf
5	Used to introduce your opinion	spanerlloy
6	A bad use of money	stofaewa money

### Unit 69

## 1 Rewrite the underlined words but keep the meaning the same.

	I'm sorry, Paul <u>is out</u> . <u>Isn t in</u>
1	I can't <u>phone</u> her <u>now</u> .
2	Is that Sue? ~ Yes, this is Sue.
3	I'll <u>call</u> you back later.
4	Can I speak to Anton? ~ Yes, wait a minute.
5	She texted me earlier.

#### 2 Write the phone conversation in the right order.

oment – I'll get her.	
1 B	
How are you? 2 A	
? 3 B	
ks. Er, is Jessica in? 4 A	
5 B	
6 A	
7 B	
How are you? 2 A	



## 70 I can use common adjectives

## A Common opposites 6.

















- 1 She's asleep. OFF awake
- 2 The bird's dead. opp alive
- 3 He's very strong. opp weak
- 4 She's a rich woman. opp poor
- 5 These are common names in Italy. OPP unusual
- This Swiss knife's very useful. opp useless
- The screen is very wide. OPP narrow
- 8 The children are noisy. opp quiet

#### spotlight Position of adjectives

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after be. It's a quiet village. The village is quiet.

You can't use alive, awake and asleep before a noun.

The man is alive. NOT an alive man

1 True or fals	e? Write	To	r <i>F</i> .
----------------	----------	----	--------------

- ► The River Nile is very narrow. \_\_\_\_F\_\_
- 1 Julius Caesar is still alive. ——
- 2 People are noisy at football matches. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Dictionaries are useless. \_\_\_\_\_
- Some people talk when they're asleep. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Elephants are very strong. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 America is a poor country. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Toyota cars are common in Japan. \_\_\_\_
- 8 Pasta is unusual in Italy. \_\_\_\_\_

### Write the opposite of the bold word.

- ► They're very **rich**, poor
- 1 It's a **useless** knife.
- 2 My arms are quite strong.
- 3 Is he alive?
- 4 The people are very **poor**.
- 5 It's a **noisy** place.

- 6 It's a quiet town.
- The garden's quite wide.
- 8 That's very **common**.
- 9 Is she **awake**?
- 10 It's quite a narrow road.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the adjectives and their opposites.



### B Classroom habits

#### Students: Teachers: It's impossible to remember I tell my students to write new Petra Simon everything, so it's necessary words in a vocabulary notebook. to revise things you've I think it's really helpful. studied in class. Jill It's very annoying when I write new words on my students are late for class. Ivan hand, and then on my arms. It's a strange thing to do, When students do activities, I Martin and some students think have to give clear instructions. I'm mad. Carol I don't like students who talk Yoko I repeat new words four when I'm listening to other or five times; it's the only students. That's really irritating. way to remember. Jean Pierre In English, you often write words in one way and say them in another; it's very confusing. Glossary 4 Write SYN (synonym) or OPP (opposite) next to each pair of words. helpful useful or giving help annoying If something is annoying, it makes you ▶ possible/impossible OPP a bit angry. syn irritating 1 mad/crazy \_\_\_\_\_ clear easy to understand opp confusing 2 annoying/irritating \_\_\_\_\_ impossible not possible opp possible necessary If something is necessary, you must 3 necessary/unnecessary have it or do it. opp unnecessary 4 clear/confusing strange unusual and perhaps not normal syn odd 5 odd/strange \_\_\_\_\_ mad very unusual and not normal syn crazy it's the only way there is no other way Complete the sentences. ► I've got two dictionaries. One of them is \_unnecessary ... 1 His explanation was very \_\_\_\_\_\_; I didn't understand anything. 2 An old man in the street was very \_\_\_\_\_ and gave me directions. 3 It's \_\_\_\_\_ to fly round the world in five hours. 4 My brother has got three jobs, and works every day of the year. I think he's \_\_\_\_ 5 I was the \_\_\_\_\_\_person to come by car; the others took the bus or walked. 6 Cookery books are useful, but they aren't 7 My cat is very \_\_\_\_\_\_. He likes dog food more than cat food.



8 He gave me very \_\_\_\_\_\_ instructions to get to the house, so I had no problems.

9 My sister talks all the time when I'm watching TV: it's very \_\_\_\_\_

## 71 I can use common adverbs

## A Emphasis 60

only	We use <b>only</b> to say 'no more than'.  She was <b>only</b> 17 when she got married. (It's unusual to get married at 17.)  We can walk to the station – it's <b>only</b> five minutes. (Not 15 or 20.)
even	We often use <b>even</b> before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe. It's cold here, <b>even</b> in summer. (In most places, it's warm in the summer.) My older brother is 1.90m, and my younger brother is <b>even</b> taller.
still	We use <b>still</b> to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.  After 25 years, I <b>still</b> love my job. (I continue to love my job.)  Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're <b>still</b> in London.
especially (also particularly)	We use <b>especially</b> to say 'more than others' or 'more than usual'.  We liked the towns in the south, <b>especially</b> Seville. (Seville was the best.)  It's very hot here, <b>especially</b> in July and August. (July and August are the hottest.)

0	Put the word in	brackets in	the correct	place in	the sentence
---	-----------------	-------------	-------------	----------	--------------

It's six kilometres to the next town. (only) It's only six kilometres to the next town.

- 1 He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still)
- 2 It's nice there, in the morning. (especially)
- 3 There are three students in the dass, (only)
- 4 He works on Sundays. (even)
- 5 She's at university. (still)
- 6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is bigger. (even)

#### 2 Circle the correct answer.

- ► The food is good there, only especially the fish.
- 1 He was only/even 15 when he left school.
- 2 I've seen the film five times and | even/still enjoy it.
- 3 The students are very nice, still/particularly Marcel.
- 4 There are even/only three bridges like this in the world.
- 5 It was cold yesterday but it's even/still colder today.
- 6 I study hard but my English is still/only terrible.

Write the new words in your own sentences. Say them to yourself.

#### Complete the sentences.

	He's ninety,	but he	still	drives	a ca	ar
--	--------------	--------	-------	--------	------	----

1 \_\_\_\_\_ four people came to the party; it was a bit sad.

2 They've been in Hong Kong for ten years and they \_\_\_\_\_\_ like living there.

3 I love fish, \_\_\_\_\_salmon.

- 4 He can't drive; he's \_\_\_\_\_\_15.
- 5 Jacqui's thin, but her sister is \_\_\_\_\_ thinner.
- 6 She enjoyed the book, \_\_\_\_\_ the first part.



## B Degree 6

a bit/a little	Use <b>a bit</b> or <b>a little</b> before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (NOT a bit good)  The lesson was <b>a bit</b> boring. It's <b>a little</b> warmer than yesterday.
quite	= more than a bit, but less than very The film was quite interesting. The town is quite big.
extremely	= a bit stronger than very Use <b>extremely</b> before gradable adjectives (see spotlight). I was <b>extremely</b> tired by 6 o'clock. We were <b>extremely</b> busy on Saturday.
absolutely	Use <b>absolutely</b> before ungradable adjectives (see spotlight) for emphasis. The food was <b>absolutely</b> delicious. The party was <b>absolutely</b> fantastic.
really	<ul> <li>very, extremely or absolutely</li> <li>You can use really with gradable and ungradable adjectives, and with verbs.</li> <li>The restaurant was really good. The weather was really terrible.</li> <li>We were really tired. I really liked the film.</li> </ul>

#### 4 Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- It was quite a bit interesting.
- ► This programme is (eally/absolutely terrible.
- 1 The weather was very/absolutely nice.
- 2 Her new shoes are very/absolutely wonderful.
- 3 My sister is a bit/a little untidy.
- 4 I really/extremely want to go to Australia.
- 5 She was really/extremely friendly.
- 6 Their flat is a bit/quite nice.
- 7 The hotel was very/really good.

They're <u>really</u> nice people.

8 The weather was absolutely terrible.

8 The boat is extremely/really enormous.

#### spotlight Gradable and ungradable adjectives

100%

Gradable adjectives, e.g. good, big, bad, nice, boring, young, tired, busy
Ungradable adjectives, e.g., awful, perfect, terrible,

Ungradable adjectives, e.g. awful. perfect. terrible, wonderful. delicious, fantastic (= very. very good). enormous (= very. very big)

5	Rewrite the sentences. Use an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined word(s
	Meanife the selltelices. Ose all adverb with a similar meanify to the diluctilied words

	The film was a bit boring. The film was a little boring.
<b></b>	The children were really fantastic. The children were absolutely fantastic.
1	He was <u>very</u> good.
2	The holiday was <u>absolutely</u> wonderful.
3	She's a little unfriendly.
4	The kitchen was <u>extremely</u> clean.
5	The room was a bit small.
6	Her new boyfriend is really awful.



## 72 I can use irregular verbs

### A Past tenses 6

Here are some common irregular verbs with their past tense forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

be was/were bring brought buy bought cost did drive drove feel felt	find found fly flew forget give gave go went grow hold held	keep kept know knew leave left lend lent put put read read ring rang	run ran see saw send sent sit sat sleep slept speak spoke spend spent	stand stood swim swam take took teach taught think thought win won write wrote
---	---	--	---	--

- Circle the right answers.
  - ► Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'a' in the past tense.
    - (sit) (ring) (swim) bring
  - 1 Three verbs which have the same form in the infinitive and the past tense.

    put cost read run
  - 2 Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'o' in the past tense. write drive give win
  - 3 Three verbs which change the final 'd' to 't' in the past tense. spend stand send lend
  - 4 Three verbs which change from 'o' to 'e' in the past tense. know hold cost grow
  - 5 Three verbs which form the past tense with '-ought'. teach buy bring think
- 2 Find eight more past tense verbs.

seflew no left spoked okepten awond ide found efelt as a to

- 3 Complete the sentences using the correct verb in the past tense.
  - ► This coat cost more than €500.
  - 1 I w \_\_\_\_\_ so tired, I s \_\_\_\_ for ten hours.
  - 2 We s \_\_\_\_\_ across the river.
  - 3 1 r\_\_\_\_\_ her on my mobile.
  - 4 He w the email but f to send it.
  - 5 They s.\_\_\_\_\_ the film last night.
  - 6 She b. \_\_\_\_ a new car yesterday.
  - 7 They s.\_\_\_\_ up when he came in.
  - 8 We t. \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi, then w \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema.
- Test yourself. Cover the past tense forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past tense forms?



## Past participles 60

Here are the same irregular verbs as on page 175 with their past participle forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

be	been	find	found flown forgotten given gone grown held	keep	kept	run	run	stand	stood
bring	brought	fly		know	known	see	seen	swim	swum
buy	bought	forget		leave	left	send	sent	take	taken
cost	cost	give		lend	lent	sit	sat	teach	taught
do	done	go		put	pnt	sleep	slept	think	thought
drive	driven	grow		read	read	speak	spoken	win	won
feel	felt	hold		ring	rung	spend	spent	write	written

Eleven more of these verbs have the same form in the past tense and past participle, e.g. find, found, found. Write the past tense/past participle below.

	drive X leave	bring be	know cost	keep run		do think	put go	fly ring	feel sleep	hold stand up	write
foun	d									- 401	
	- Constant		nitre(	100100000000	***************************************			-			

- 6 Write the past participle of the verbs below. What is similar about them?
  - ▶ fly <u>flown</u> 4 take \_\_\_\_\_ 7 speak \_\_\_\_\_ 1 forget \_\_\_\_\_ 5 write \_\_\_\_
    - 8 drive
  - 2 give \_\_\_\_\_ 6 know \_\_\_\_
- 9 grow \_\_\_\_\_

- Complete the questions with a past participle of a verb from the box. You will answer the questions in Exercise 8.

	teach	read	swim	sleep	speak	send	drive	lend 🗸	win	
Ha	ve you e				ABO	UT YOU	spot	light ever		
1			e a lot of r h newspa <sub>l</sub>				now)	in questions	in the pres	ent perfect.
3		a lesson? any mon	)				~ No. Has y	I haven't. Jour sister <b>eve</b>	<b>r</b> been to Ca	iro?
5		•	to the wr	ong perso	n?		~ Yes	, she has. NOT	Yes, she eve	er has.
7		in the M	editerrane ous persoi							

- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Cover the past participle forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past participle forms?



## I can use phrasal verbs

## A Meaning 👀

Most phrasal verbs have a verb (sit, stand, get, etc.) and a particle (up, on, off, etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.









Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
give something up	He had to give up football.	stop doing something
get on with someone	I like Sue; we <b>get on</b> well.	have a good relationship
take off	The plane couldn't take off.	leave the ground and start flying
grow up	When Ben <b>grows up</b> , he wants to be a vet.	change from a child to an adult
find out something	I must <b>find out</b> the times of the trains to Southampton.	find a fact or piece of information you need/want
go out	Let's <b>go out</b> this evening.	leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. cinema, disco, etc.

### Circle the correct particle.

- I'd like to lie up/down for a few minutes.
- 1 Can we find out/over the cost of the tickets?
- 2 Where did she grow out/up?
- 3 He fell over/on when he ran down the road.
- 4 Do you want to go out/off this evening?
- 5 Pearl wants to give on/up her job.
- 6 Do you get in/on well with your parents?

#### spotlight Phrasal verbs

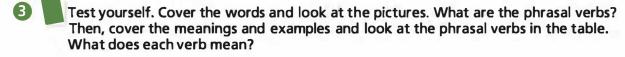
Phrasal verbs are very common in spoken English. We don't use them as often in formal written English. Be careful: some have more than one meaning:

The plane couldn't take off.

You can take off your jacket.

Complete the sentence	es with the correct particle
-----------------------	------------------------------

- ► Pasha doesn't want to go <u>out</u> this evening; she's tired.
- 1 don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Everyone stood \_\_\_\_\_ when he came into the room.
- 3 Maciej doesn't spend much time with his sister; they don't get \_\_\_\_\_\_\_very well.
- 4 She sat \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the table and started eating.
- 5 The doctor told me to lie \_\_\_\_\_ on the bed.
- 6 I told my brother to give \_\_\_\_\_smoking.
- 7 The plane took \_\_\_\_\_\_ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
- 8 She fell \_\_\_\_\_ in the street, but several people helped her.





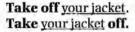
### B Grammar 60

Some phrasal verbs don't have an object.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
go up	The price of petrol will go up soon.	increase, become more
carry on with something	Can we carry on with the exercise?	continue with something
go back	She wants to <b>go back</b> to London.	return to a place
wake up	l always <b>wake up</b> at 7.00 a.m.	stop sleeping

Other phrasal verbs need an object. It can go before or after the particle.







Could you turn on the light? Could you turn the light on?



Put on your shoes, Put your shoes on.

When the object is a pronoun (e.g. it, them) it must go before the particle.

Take it off. (NOT Take off it.)
Can I try them on? (NOT ... try on them.)

Could you **turn** it **on**? (NOT ... turn on it.) **Look** it **up** in that dictionary. (NOT ... Look up it.)

4 Change the **bold** words to *it* or *them*. Put the pronoun in the correct place.

		1 001 11			
	Look up the word.	Look it up.	4	Put those socks on.	
	Look up <b>both words</b> .	Look them up.	5	Take off your shoes.	_#####################################
1	Take off your jacket.	- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1- 1-	6	Try on this shirt.	
2	Try on these trousers.	-0-1	7	Turn on the lights.	anna manatana
3	Turn on the TV.		8	Put <b>your coat</b> on.	

Are the sentences correct or do they need the pronoun it? Where? Look at the examples.

<b></b>	Could you turn on, please? Could you turn it on, please?
<b></b>	Please sit down. correct
1	Could I try on?
2	Do you want to go back?
3	You can take off if you're hot.
4	Look up in the dictionary.
5	His salary will go up soon.
6	Do they want to stop or carry on?
7	Did you put on?
8	What time do you usually wake up?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

5 When you buy clothes, do you usually try them on first?

1	Where did you grow up?
2	How do you feel when you wake up?
3	How often do you go out in the evenings?
4	Do you get on well with people who live near you?



# 74 I can use prepositions of time 6

at	a time at six o'clock at midday/midnight  a day on Tuesday on Friday evening on Tuesdays = every Tuesday on my birthday on Christmas Day		a mealtime at breakfast/lunch/dinner (time)  a date on September 1st on the sixth of May	
on				
in	a part of a day in the morning in the afternoon in the evening	a season in (the) spring/s in (the) autumn		a month, year or century in July/December in 1990/2050 in the 21st century = 2000 – 2099

## spotlight a

We also use at in these phrases:

I relax at the weekend.

Some doctors work **at night**. NOT <del>in the night</del> What are you doing **at Christmas/at New Year?** 

- 1 Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.
  - ▶ in the spring/February 15th/the evening
  - 1 at teatime/2005/the weekend
  - 2 **in** August/summer/Friday
  - 3 on April/your birthday/Saturdays
  - 4 at night/the morning/half past seven
  - 5 in autumn/the 20th century/4.00

- 6 **on** midnight/June 2<sup>nd</sup>/Sunday afternoon
- 7 at breakfast/midday/the autumn
- 8 **on** winter/Christmas Day/the fifth of May
- 9 in the afternoon/dinnertime/2008
- 10 at New Year/the evening/six o'clock

2 Write the correct preposition in each spa	ace.
---	------

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left ▶ \_\_\_\_\_\_ Thursday morning (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ about nine, and got there (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_ spring, but it was great – really sunny. (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_ Friday we had lunch with an old friend who I met at university (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_ 1997. Then (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the evening, we went to a restaurant, and got home (8) \_\_\_\_\_\_ midnight. (9) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We'd like to go back for the Brighton Festival which starts (10) \_\_\_\_\_\_ 6 May.

ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

Wh	en do you
1	get up?
2	study English?
3	go swimming?
4	watch TV?
_	an to cloop?

When was the last time you ...

- 6 saw your family?
- 7 went on holiday?
- 8 went to the mountains?
- 9 went to bed very late?
- 10 went to a party?



# 75 I can use time words and phrases

# A Past, present and future 60

Look at the diary and read the sentences below. It's midday on Thursday, 11 April.

Mon	8	Jon and Trish 7.30	Mon	15	London
Tues	9	pay phone bill	Tues	16	dinner with Scott 8.00
Wed	10	lunch with Liz 1.00 meet Brian 7.45	Wed	17	
Thur	(11)	cinema 7.15	Thur	18	Dr Holton 10.45
Fri	12	meeting 9.00 - 12.00 Wheeler's bar 7.30	Fri	19	theatre 8.00
Sat	13	stay at Gary's	Sat	20	Pete's birthday
Sun	14		Sun	21	Mum and Dad for lunch

I was in Moscow last week. I saw Jon and Trish three days ago. I had lunch with Liz yesterday. I went out with Brian last night. I'm going to the cinema this evening. I've got a meeting tomorrow morning. I'm going to stay at Gary's this weekend. Then I'm in London for three days next week. I have a doctor's appointment next Thursday. I'm seeing my parents in ten days' time.

If the or talse? Write / or r	A	True or fa	lse? V	<b>Vrite</b>	T or I	5
-------------------------------	---	------------	--------	--------------	--------	---

- ▶ I was in Moscow last week. \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 I got back from Moscow four days ago. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I saw Jon and Trish this week.
- 3 I paid the phone bill three days ago. .....
- 4 I met Brian yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I was in London last week. \_\_\_\_
- 6 I'm going to the cinema this afternoon.
- 7 I'm going out tomorrow evening. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I'm seeing Scott in four days' time. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 I'm seeing the doctor in a week's time. \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 I'm going to the theatre next Friday. \_\_\_\_\_

## Glossary

last week = April 1-7 NOT the last week this week = April 8 - 14next week = April 15 - 21 NOT the next week last night or yesterday evening NOT yesterday night/last evening appointment a meeting at a fixed time, often with one person, usually for work or with a doctor, dentist, etc.

## Complete the sentences.

- We saw them yesterday evening \_\_\_\_\_. 1 She saw Paul about three days \_\_\_\_\_\_ 5 She can't come. She's got a dentist's 2 I wrote Pete's birthday in my \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 He wants to come in a week's .....
- 3 She rang me at 10 o'clock last \_\_\_\_\_\_ . 6 I'm going to Italy \_\_\_\_\_ week.

## Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.

>	I had lunch with Liz	a week ago.
1	P-18-40-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-18-	on Thursday evening
2		five days ago.
3		last weekend.

4	**************************************	tomorrow morning
5		in three days' time

6 this weekend.

# **B** Words and phrases often confused **6**

before/after				
	10.00 11.00 12.00 Lunch 2.00 3.00 4.00  We did some shopping before lunch. We went for a coffee after lunch.			
at the moment/ in a minute	I'm very busy at the moment. = I'm very busy now. Not in this moment I'll speak to you in a minute. = I'll speak to you one or two minutes from now.			
soon/later	I'm going home soon. = I'm going home in a short time from now.  Can I talk to you later? = Can I talk to you in the future but not now?			
until	We worked until ten o'clock. = We stopped work at 10.00. NOT by 10.00 I want to stay here until July. = I don't want to go before July.			
for/since	I moved to this house. Sarah was born.  Sarah is now five years old.			
	I've lived here <b>since</b> Sarah was born. I've lived here <b>for</b> five years.			

## Circle the correct answer.

- Dinner will be ready at (in)a minute.
- 1 I had a shower before/after I went to bed.
- 2 We went home before/after work and watched TV.
- 3 I usually work until/for one o'clock, and then have a sandwich.
- 4 She's in the library at/in the moment.
- 5 I haven't seen her for/since last week.
- 6 I'm very busy this morning. Can I phone you later/soon?
- 7 She has worked here for/since seven years.
- 8 The taxi will be here later/soon. Are you ready?

## spotlight for and since

We use **for** with a period of time (**for** two weeks. six months. etc.), and **since** with a point in time (**since** 2003, last year, I came to England, etc.). We often use these words with the present perfect. I've been at university **for** a **year**. I've known Joe **since** 2002.

## **5** Complete the sentences. Use soon, later, before, at, in, until, for or since.

- ▶ I had a rest after lunch.
- 1 She waited \_\_\_\_\_\_ 7.00, then went home.
- 2 He's been here \_\_\_\_\_ three weeks.
- 3 I'm getting tired. Can we go home \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 Can you help me? ~ Yes, I'll be with you \_\_\_\_\_ a minute.
- 5 What are you doing \_\_\_\_\_ the moment?
- 6 We haven't seen them \_\_\_\_\_last summer.
- 7 | wrote the email \_\_\_\_\_ | went out.
- 8 I'm busy tomorrow. Can we go out \_\_\_\_\_ this week?

## 6 Translate the words in **bold** in this unit into your own language.



# 76 I can use prepositions of place and movement

# A In, at, on 60

at a position, for example a place to meet or where something happens Let's meet at the bank/at the bus stop. I saw him at the match/at the party at home/at work/at school.



in a three-dimensional space in a box, a cupboard in a room, an office, a flat in a garden, a park



in a big area in a village/town/city in the countryside in London/Spain/Asta/the world





on the road, the coast, the river



on the table, the wall on the first floor



He's in the river. in or on? She's on the river.

- Circle the correct preposition.
  - ► I live in on Canada.
  - 1 She's not in/on her office.
  - 2 The photos are in/on the wall.
  - 3 We met in/at a golf match.
  - 4 We stayed in/on a lovely village.
  - **5** She's swimming in/on the pool.
  - 6 Barcelona is in/on the coast.
  - 7 We live at/in the countryside.

- 8 There are too many cars in/on the road.
- 9 Dinner is on/at the table.
- 10 They're sitting in/at the garden.
- 11 The books are on/in the table.
- 12 I saw her in/at the bus stop.
- 13 The number is in/on the door.
- 14 I spoke to her in/at the party.
- Complete the questions with in, on, or at.
  - Which country do you live in ?
  - 1 Do you live \_\_\_\_\_ a village, a town, or a city?
  - 2 Do you live \_\_\_\_ a flat or a house?
  - 3 Is your town \_\_\_\_\_ a river?
  - 4 Which floor is your bedroom \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 5 Do you like walking \_\_\_\_\_ the countryside?
  - 6 Are you learning English \_\_\_\_\_ school, \_\_\_\_ work,
    - or \_\_\_\_\_ an English-speaking country?
- **ABOUT YOU**
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.



## **B** Other prepositions 6.





The people are in front of the garage. The postman is between mum and dad. The adults are behind the children. The tree is near the house.

The office is **above** the garage. The garage is **below** the office. The seat is **next to** the bus stop. The bus stop is **opposite** the garage.

## True or false? Write T or F.

- ► The tree's opposite the house. \_\_\_\_F\_\_
- 1 The blue car's near the house. \_\_\_\_
- 2 The big window is above the door. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The people are opposite the garage. \_\_\_\_
- 4 The postman's next to mum. \_\_\_\_
- 5 The seat's between the house and the tree. \_\_\_\_
- 6 The children are behind mum and dad. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The girl is in front of the postman. \_\_\_\_\_
- B The front door's below the big window. \_\_\_\_
- 9 The bus stop's next to the green car. \_\_\_\_\_

## Complete the sentences.

- ► The tree's behind the blue car.
- 1 The bus stop is \_\_\_\_\_ the seat.
- 2 The blue car is \_\_\_\_\_ the tree.
- 3 The boy's standing \_\_\_\_\_ dad.
- 4 The green car's \_\_\_\_\_ the bus stop.
- 5 The bus stop is \_\_\_\_\_ the green car and the seat.
- 6 The seat is \_\_\_\_\_ the garage.
- 7 The postman's dad.

## 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What's opposite the building where you live? \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What's behind your building?
- 3 What's next to it? 4 Are there any shops near it?
- 5 What's above your living room? \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What's below your bedroom? \_\_\_\_\_

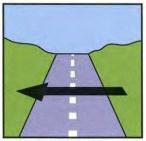
Test yourself. Cover the sentences and look at the picture. What can you say about ... the people? the postman? the office? the garage? the seat? the bus stop?



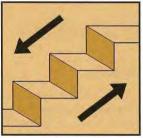
# C Prepositions of movement 60







go across



go down



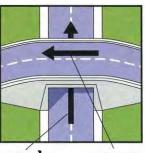
go up

go along



go past the church

go through



go under go over

- Circle the correct word.
  - ▶ Don't run down the hill > church.
  - 1 Walk under the trees/field.
  - 2 Drive along the city/motorway.
  - 3 Don't go across the river/gate. 9 Walk out of the building/hill.
  - 4 Go into the beach/shop.
  - 5 Walk through the gate/stairs.
- 6 I ran past the bus stop/countryside.
  - 7 Go up the floor/mountain.
  - 8 Don't run down the stairs/bridge.
  - 10 We flew over the sky/field.
- 9 Complete 1–10 with a preposition in each sentence.
  - ► Go straight on, along this road.
  - 1 We shouted hello as the boat went \_\_\_\_\_\_ the bridge.
  - 2 She went \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
  - 3 They drove \_\_\_\_\_ the hill to look at the view from the top.
  - 4 We walked \_\_\_\_\_ the river for about thirty minutes, then walked back.
  - 5 We drove \_\_\_\_\_\_ a restaurant on the way to the station.
  - 6 He came \_\_\_\_\_ the door and fell over; it was very funny.
  - 7 I came \_\_\_\_\_ the bank and saw the accident.
  - 8 We went \_\_\_\_\_ the hill, into the valley below.
  - 9 The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens and he just ran \_\_\_\_\_ the road.
  - 10 We swam \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge, so they couldn't see us.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the prepositions?

# 77 I can use link words (1)

# A And, also, too, as well 60

The city centre is di	rty <b>and</b> very noisy.	And links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,).	
The centre is dirty,	and it's <b>also</b> very expensive. and it <b>also</b> costs a lot to live there.	Also goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. be, can, but before the main verb.	
The centre is dirty,	and it's very expensive and it costs a lot to live there as well.	Too and as well go at the end of the sentence. Too and as well are more informal than also.	

1	Are also, too or as well in the correct positions? Put a tick ( $\checkmark$ ) or a cross ( $x$ ).
	You need a dictionary, and as well a grammar book is useful. $\underline{X}$

- 1 The house is beautiful, and it's near the park also.
- 2 He speaks German, and he understands too Greek.
- 3 We went out for dinner and Lucy came as well. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I cleaned the house and washed also the car.
- 5 She worked in Rome, and I think she worked in Ravenna too. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 We've got a big garden and as well a park near the house. ....

2	Put the words i	n the correct order	to make sentences
---	-----------------	---------------------	-------------------

<b>&gt;</b>	too/and it's good/the weather's/in autumn/nice/in winter The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.
1	yoghurt / also / like / and I I often eat ice cream
2	but I go / too / watching TV / to the cinema a lot I enjoy
3	German / as weil / understand / I can / and I can speak English
4	also / but I / music / of books / listen to I read a lot
5	and / on TV / I watch it / as well / football

**ABOUT YOU** 

- 3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write true or false.
  - ► The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too. false



# B Reason and result 6



I went into the café <b>because</b> it was raining. I went into the café <b>because of</b> the rain.	because (of) comes before the reason because + clause because of + noun	
I went into the café (in order) to get out of the rain. = I went in the café because it was raining.	(in order) to comes before the reason (in order) to + verb	
It was raining, so I went into the café.  = I went in the café because it was raining.	so comes before the result so + clause There is usually a comma (,) before so.	

## 4 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ I took my umbrella because/so it was raining.
- 1 I stayed at home because/because of the weather.
- 2 We went to Paris so/to see a friend.
- 3 I couldn't go out because/because of I had to study.
- 4 It was my birthday, so/because we had a party.
- 5 She went to the market to/because get a book.
- 6 She lost her passport, so/because she couldn't go to China.

## Write because, because of, so, or to.

	The were late because of the	ne traffic.
1	I'm going to the chemist's	get some aspirins.
2	It was a nice day,	we went out.
3	I bought the house	the beautiful view.
4	I don't go to the theatre very often	it's too expensive.
	radire go to the theate very orteri.	TES 100 CAPELISITE.
	I'm going out now,	
5		I'll phone you tomorrow.

8 Are you studying English \_\_\_\_\_\_ get a better job?





# I can use link words (2)

## A When and if (future) 6.

I'll post the letter **when** 1 go out. (I'm sure I'm going out later.) I'll post the letter if I go out. (I'm not sure I'm going out later.) When I go out, I'll post the letter. If I go out, The verb after when or if is usually in the present simple, not the will form. NOT I'll post the letter when I will go out.

## Circle the correct answer.

- I'll tell her if I see her. = I'm sure(not sure)that I'll see her.
- 1 He'll be OK when he sees her. = He's sure/not sure that he'll see her.
- 2 If I go to Beijing, I'll email you. = I'm sure/not sure that I'll go to Beijing.
- 3 I'll ring you if I can come. = I'm sure/not sure that I can come.
- 4 He'll feel better when he gets home. = It's sure/not sure that he's going home.
- 5 When we get on the train, we'll ring you. = It's sure/not sure that we'll get on the train.
- 6 You'll find the museum if you take a map. = It's sure/not sure that you'll take a map.

## Complete the sentences with if or when.

- ▶ <u>lf</u> you miss the seven o'clock train, vou'll have to walk. 1 \_\_\_\_\_ it's cold tonight, we'll have soup. 2 \_\_\_\_\_\_ I'm 30, I'll have a party. 3 I'll call you \_\_\_\_\_\_ you forget to ring me.
- 4 We'll leave \_\_\_\_\_ it stops raining.
- 5 He'll do it \_\_\_\_\_ he wakes up tomorrow.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ you lose your key, you can phone me.

## **B** When and while ••

When and while both mean 'in that period of ti	ime'.
I phoned the doctor $\frac{\mathbf{when}}{\mathbf{while}}$ I was on holiday.	= in a period when I was on holiday
past X	now
on holiday (a period of time)	
When (but not while) also means 'at that mome	ent' or 'at that time'.
I gave Jack the money <b>when</b> he got home. NOT <del>while he got home.</del>	= at the time I met him
gave him the money	
past X X	now
Jack got home	



- Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.
  - The lesson started when while the students sat down.
  - 1 Come and see me while/when you arrive.
  - 2 I'll help with the children when/while you get home.
  - 3 She saw the accident while/when she was shopping.
  - 4 She met Mr Jacks while/when she got to the station.
  - 5 I'll wash the car while/when you're at work.
  - 6 Shall we go out when/while it stops raining?

# C A sequence of actions 60

... and we had a really nice week. Firstly, we spent a few days in Budapest, then we went to Vienna. Afterwards, we went on a tour of the Lakes and stayed in Salzburg for a couple of nights.

... it's very easy to make.

First of all, you fry the meat, and then you fry some onions and add them to the meat. After that, you add some red wine and water and cook slowly for three hours. Finally, you add some red pepper and cook it for fifteen minutes.

## Glossary

firstly You say firstly when you are talking about the first thing in a list. (also first or first of all) (and) then/after that You say (and) then or after that when you are talking about the next thing in a list. (also afterwards) finally You say finally when you are talking about the last thing in a list, usually if it is a long list of four or more things.

	pepper ar	nd cook it for fifteen minutes.	in a list, usually if it is a long lis offour or more things.
Cor	mplete the texts with	link words. Don't use the sa	me word twice.
t	to go and talk to the bos		rm. (1) you have meet other people who work in the ten test.
		I checked the train times on the see if they were cheaper.	internet, and (5)
Put	the sentences in the	correct order. Then add link	words.
I checked the answers. / I did all the grammar exercises.  First of all, I did all the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.			
1 She made the pasta sauce. / She boiled the pasta. / She added the sauce to the pasta.			
2 I did a Masters degree. / I did a degree in history. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.			
		We stayed in Munich for a few	·
			/ I went to the market. / I made a
		e or four things you did last	



# 79 I can use 'have' and 'have got'

# A Have and have got 60

My brother <b>has/has got</b> a house in the country. His wife <b>has/'s got</b> an art studio there.	If you have/have got something, it is yours: it belongs to you.
She has/has got a bad cold at the moment.	Use have/have got to describe illness.
They have!'ve got two young daughters.	Use have/have got to describe relationships,
Both girls <b>have/have got</b> blon <b>d</b> e hair.	Usc have/have got to describe appearance.

## spotlight have and have got

**Have** is a full verb. Use **do**, **does** and **did** in questions, short answers and negatives.

Do they have a car? ~ Yes, they do. 1 didn't have a job last year.

In negatives and questions, have got is more common than have with do. We don't use have got in short answers. Have they got a car? He hasn't got a bike. He doesn't have a bike. (less common)

1	Change have to	the correct for	m of have got i	n each sentence.
---	----------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------

- ▶ I have an old car. I've got an old car.
- 1 She has blue eyes.
- 2 They have a small dog.
- 3 I don't have a mobile phone.
- 4 He doesn't have any money. ...
- 5 Do you have any sisters?
- 6 Does she have a flat in town?

## Correct the mistakes.

- ► He have a car. He's got a car. OR He has a car.
- 1 She got any children? .....
- 2 They has got a lovely garden. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Have she got long hair?
- 4 My sister no have a boyfriend.
- 5 Have you a computer? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 We don't got any friends here.

## 3 Complete the questions.

## ABOUT YOU

	Have you got a car?	If so, what kind?
1	Have you a bike?	If so, when do you use it?
2	you have a computer?	If so, what kind?
3	your parents got a dog?	If so, what's its name?
4	you got an English dictionary?	If so, what's it called?
5	vou have any English-speaking frien	nds? If so, who are they?

## 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



## B Have + noun 6

have breakfast/lunch/dinner NOT the breakfast/the lunch/the dinner	We <b>had lunch</b> in a pizzeria.
have a wash/a shower/a bath	I had a quick shower before I left.
have a drink/something to eat	I had a drink with Joe last night.  Let's have something to eat.
have a swim/a walk/a run activities you do because you enjoy them	I didn't have a run this morning. We had a nice walk yesterday.
have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day	We <b>had a great time</b> in Kyoto.
have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey	Have a nice weekend. ~ Yeah, you too.
have a break = stop work for a short period and relax have a rest = relax and do nothing	Let's have a break for ten minutes. I'm going to have a rest this weekend.

You can't use have got in these expressions. Not Let's have got a break.

5 Make four more groups of phrases with have from the words below.

swim shower	breakfast weekend	holiday break 🗸	bath dinner	journey walk	rest 🗸 wash	lunch run
Group 1	Group	2 Gr	oup 3	Group 4	Gro	up 5
rest						
break						

6 Complete the postcard.

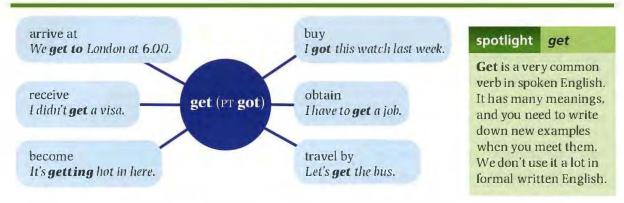
Dear Cana		
We're having a great ▶ time her	re in Parati. Yesterday we had a (1)	
round the town and bought a few things.	. In the evening we had a (2)	in the bar
you recommended. Afterwards, we had 130	in a nice fish resta	ourant. We're going
to have a (4) in the	sea this morning, then maybe do some m	ore shopping this
afternoon. I think we'll have a (5)	after that. I hope you're e	injoying yourself in
Rio, and have a good (6)	back to Buenos Aires on Saturday.	See you soon.
Love, Nicky		

Complete the sentences.

	got up late and didn't have any breakfast.
1	Would you like to have something to?
2	I worked hard today, so I'm going to have a this evening.
3	We have a twenty-minute between the lessons.
4	All the buses were late this morning, so I had a bad to work.
5	Did you have a good in London yesterday?
6	Have a nice See you on Monday.
7	They had a fantastic in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
8	l always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a



# 80 I can use 'get' 60



1 Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of get. You will complete column 3 in Exercise 2.

•	He becomes angry if you're late.	He gels angry if you're late.	
1	Did you receive my message?		
2	I must buy some new clothes.		
3	We arrived home late last night.		
4	It's becoming cold.		
5	I received three letters today.		
6	Where did you buy that bag?		
7	He needs to obtain a job.		
8	Do you want to travel by train?		

Cover sentences 1 – 8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does get mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.

He gets angry if you're late. become

Complete the sentences in a logical way, using get.

	There weren't any buses, so we got the train		
1	Do you want to walk or?		
2	What time did you?		
3	Those shoes are lovely. Where did you	as management	?
4	Could you close the window? It's		
5	I must go now, it's		
6	She sent me an email but I didn't		
7	I need a map of the town centre. Where can 1		

8 I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_\_

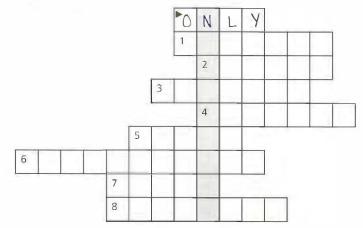
# Review: Language

## Unit 70

1 Describe each picture with an adjective.



2 Complete the crossword. The letters in grey spell out another word. What is it?



- ► There is no other. Only
- 1 Giving help.
- 2 Opposite of unusual.
- 3 Opposite of useful.
- 4 Synonym of odd.
- 5 Opposite of *quiet*.
- 6 Not important; you don't need it. ....
- 7 Opposite of confusing.
- 8 Synonym of *irritating*.

## Unit 71

1 Add one word from the box to the correct place in each sentence.

even	absolutely	still	quite
only	especially 🗸	a bit	

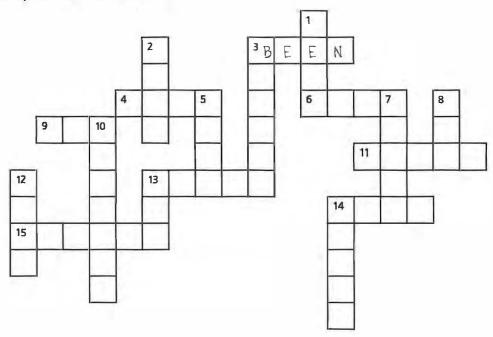
- I play tennis a lot, in the summer.
- 1 We couldn't play the match with ten players.
- 2 He lives in Italy, but speaks English most of the time.
- 3 The food is fantastic in that restaurant.
- 4 Max didn't like the film, but I thought it was good.
- 5 The last film was good, but this is better.
- 6 My English is getting better. \_\_\_\_

- 2 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.
  - ► There are too many cars on the roads, but I still drive to work
  - 1 I go swimming, even in
  - 2 It was August, but the weather was really
  - 3 The service is a bit \_\_\_\_\_ but the food is really good.
  - 4 She can't drive; she's only
  - 5 By the end of the evening I was quite
  - 6 I like her new boyfriend; he's extremely



# Unit 72

## Complete the crossword.



Down I

Across -> 3 She hasn't been to the dentist for a year. 4 Have you \_\_\_\_\_ that book? 6 They \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to work this morning. 9 1 \_\_\_\_\_ the books on the shelf. 11 I \_\_\_\_\_ these keys on the floor. Are they yours? 13 He \_\_\_\_\_ for eight hours last night. 14 I her an email yesterday. 15 He \_\_\_\_\_ to post the letter.

20	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1	We to the cinema on Saturday.
2	Have you his new film?
3	Shesome new jeans at the weekend
5	Have you your homework?
7	How long have youher?
8	Heten kilometres this morning.
10	I the book was very good.
12	She home at 8 o'clock this morning.
13	We on the floor because there were no chairs.

14 I \_\_\_\_\_ all my money on holiday.

## Unit 73

## 1 Make sentences from the words.

<b></b>	morning/1/woke/this/early/up I woke up early this morning.
1	in / grew / I / up / a / village
2	you / down / why / sit / don't /?
3	find / I / address / out / must / their
4	over / street / the / fell / in / she
5	night/you/out/last/did/go/?
6	light / on / could / the / you / turn / ?
7	look / in / up / dictionary / it / your
0	thom / l /try / could / on / ?

2 (	change the	underlined	words for a	phrasal	verb with	the same	meaning.
-----	------------	------------	-------------	---------	-----------	----------	----------

	Can I <u>remove</u> my jacket? Lune off
1	I stopped smoking last year.
2	The price of flats is <u>increasing</u> all the time.
3	She lives in Paris but wants to <u>retum</u> to Rome.
4	The plane couldn't leave the ground and start flying

F. Me have a good relationship

5 We have a good relationship.

6 When I finish this I can continue with Exercise 2.

## Unit 74

## Put the words and phrases in the correct place in the table.

the morning	y M	onday morni	ng	December	my birthday	breakfast
midnight	the sixth	of March	half	past five	the afternoon	the 21st century
summer	Tuesday	three o'clo	ck	2007	the weekend	Friday evening

In	At	On	
► the morning			

## Unit 75

## 1 Read the text, then complete the sentences.

Seven years ago I left california and went to live in Spain. I already spoke Spanish very well, and I got a job as a receptionist in a tourist hotel near Malaga. I stayed in one of the rooms and looked for somewhere to live. I found a nice apartment near the town and I worked at the hotel for two years. After that I got a similar job, this time in a large hotel on the Algarve in the south of Portugal. I met a Spanish man at the hotel - he also worked there - and six months later we got married. We bought a small house near the hotel and one month ago, I found out that we're going to have a baby. We are now preparing a room for him - or her.

<b>&gt;</b>	I already spoke Spanish before I went to live in Spain .
1	I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I.
2	I met a Spanish man after I
3	I've lived in the house I bought since I
4	I've lived in Portugal for
5	Soon I'm going to
6	At the moment we're



## [O] Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com Put the phrases in the correct place on the line. last night tomorrow evening today / last week next Monday in ten days' time yesterday afternoon this evening tomorrow morning two days ago 1\_\_\_ 2\_\_ 3\_\_ 4\_\_ \ \tag{t.oday} 5\_\_ 6\_\_ 7\_\_ 8\_\_ 9\_\_ Present Unit 76 1 Put the letters in order to make prepositions. 10 sotipepo \_\_\_\_\_\_ 11 tebnewe \_\_\_\_\_ 6 scoras 7 tenx ot \_\_\_\_\_\_ 2 stap \_\_\_\_\_ 12 gorhhtu \_\_\_\_\_ 8 toin \_\_\_\_\_ rean \_\_\_\_\_ 9 tou fo \_\_\_\_\_ beavo \_\_\_\_\_

			•	
wolbe	below	5	wodn	

- 1 revo\_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Which words from Exercise 1 can go in sentences 1 and 2 below?

- 1 I live below / Jack.
- 2 Jo ran \_\_\_\_\_ the park.

## 3 Write the words in the correct columns.

the world \ school the table my town the wall home Germany a football match work the countryside the second floor the bedroom the coast

In	At	On
▶ the world		

## Unit 77

## 1 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.

- ▶ We went to Rio last year because \_\_\_\_\_\_
- We decided to go in September because of \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 My mother decided to come and \_\_\_\_\_
- Our Brazilian friends weren't working, so \_\_\_\_\_ 3
- 4 They came to the airport to \_\_\_\_\_
- We had a week in Rio, and \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 We drove to São Paolo in order to \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The food was great, and \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 There are still many things to see, so \_\_\_\_\_

- a we loved the street life too.
- b I think we'll go back next year.
- c we wanted to visit some friends. <
- d see the countryside.
- e we spent a lot of time together.
- f we went to São Paolo as well.
- g the weather; it's cooler then.
- h meet us.
- i we also took her sister.

2 Complete the text with a link word/phrase from the box.

because	too 🗸	as well	because of	also	to	so			
			rsity, and he st						
			guage (1) for most of her			_			
			e. Hua went the					_	
		•	aching English.	_		-			
people were	so friendly a	and life was	great. Last mor	nth, Hua	found a	a new jo	ob in Hong K	ong,	
(5)	F	eter decide	d to leave China	a and go	there (	6)		He's	sad
about leaving	China, but	I'm sure he	'll go back and	see his fr	iends ir	the fu	ture.		

## Unit 78

1 Write sentences using phrases from each column.

you get to the airport,  you're travelling on a long flight, you can choose your seat on the plane When you are waiting for the flight, you get off, you feel ill during the flight, you lose your passport on holiday,		tell the airline staff. go to the embassy. sit near the front where it's quiet. sit in the departure lounge. don't leave anything on the plane. always wear comfortable clothes. go to the check-in desk.	
Wher	you get to the airport, go to the check		
2-1			
3			

2 Complete the text with words from the box.

after that	first of all	finally	while	if	then	when /	
When		eady to go	out for th	ne evei	ning, (1)		I have a shower. And
							n, yes, and I wash my hair,
too. (3)	I have	a shave an	d put on s	some e	expensive	aftershave.	(My girlfriend really loves
that!) (4)	, I de	cide what	to wear: u	sually	a shirt ar	nd some cas	ual trousers. And then
(5) look my bestl	, I look in ti	he mirror b	efore I go	out to	see (6) _		_everything's OK. I want to



## Unit 79

1 Circle the	correct	word	ог	phrase.
--------------	---------	------	----	---------

- ▶ What time do you have (unch)a lunch?
- 1 Did you have/had a wash before dinner?
- 2 We always have a/the swim in the lake in the afternoon.
- 3 Have you got/Did you have a good weekend?
- 4 Do/Have you got any children?
- 5 We hadn't/didn't have the same office last year.
- 6 We had a great time/weather in Italy last summer.
- 7 Can I have rest/a rest? I'm really tired.
- 8 I had/was hungry, so I had/had got dinner.

## 2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

It was sunny at midday, so we had (in the garden. lunch

1 We had a for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.

2 We had something eat at the beach.

3 My sister got blonde hair.

4 I was hot, so I had a before dinner.

5 We had a day at work. I hate my job!

6 Have a lovely in the Caribbean! \_\_\_\_\_

7 I'd like to go on holiday, but I don't any money.

8 On Sunday, we just had a and did nothing.

## Unit 80

1 What meaning does the verb *get* have in each sentence? Write the number of the sentence next to the correct verb.

	arrive obtain buy 1 travel by receive become
	ABOUT YOU
1	Where do you get your fruit and vegetables?
2	Are you trying to get a new job?
3	Do you get tired in hot weather?
4	How many text messages do you get every day?
5	Are you getting taller?
6	What did you get for your last birthday?
7	Where did you get the shoes you're wearing?
8	How often do you get the train to school or work?
9	What time did you get home last night?

2 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 1, or ask another student.





# Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

## 1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun	
advise	advice	
act	actor, actress	
advertise	advert/advertisement	
agree	agreement	
apologize	apology	
arrange	arrangement	
attach	attachment	
oegin	beginning	
believe	belief	
ouild	building, builder	
choose	choice	
climb	climbing	
collect	collection	
compose	composer	
lance	dance, dancing, dancer	
leliver	delivery	
lepart	departure	
lesign	designer	
lisagree	disagreement	
liscnss	discussion	
lraw	drawing	
lrive	driver, driving	
educate	education	
enter	entrance, entry	
examine	exam/examination	
explain	explanation	
ail	failure	
eel	feeling	
ly	flight, flying	
row	growth	
ate	hatred	
near	hearing	
nsure	insurance	
nvite	invitation	
nanage	manager	
mean	meaning	

Verb	Noun
move	movement
own	owner
park	parking
pay	payment
perform	performance, performer
permit	permission
prefer	preference
print	printer, printout, printing
pronounce	pronunciation
read	reading, reader
recommend	recommendation
refuse	refusal
report	report, reporter
reserve	reservation
respond	response
ride	riding, rider
run	run, runner, running
serve	service
shoot	shooting
sign	signature
sing	singer, singing, song
smoke	smoke, smoking
spell	spelling
study	study, <b>student</b>
suggest	suggestion
swim	swim, swimming
teach	teacher, teaching
think	thinking, thought
travel	travelling, travel
walk	walk, walking
wash	wash, washing
weigh	weight
win	winner

Test yourself. Cover one column and look at the other. Can you remember the other part of speech?



## 2 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun
angry	anger
able, unable	ability, inability
attractive	attraction
beautiful	beauty
cloudy	cloud
cold	cold
comfortable,	comfort
uncomfortable	
crowded	crowd
dangerous	danger
different	difference
dirty	dirt
eastern	east
electric, electrical	electricity
excited, exciting	excitement
fa mous	fame
foggy	fog
friendly, unfriendly	friend, friendship
geographical	geography
lucky, unlucky	luck
happy, unhappy	happiness
healthy, unhealthy	health
historic. historical	history
humid	humidity
hungry	hunger
icy	ice
ill	illness
industrial	industry
intelligent	intelligence
kind, unkind	kindness
lazy	laziness
long	length

Adjective	Noun
mad	madness
medical	medicine
musical	music
mistaken	mistake
noisy	noise
northern	north
possible, impossible	possibility
painful	pain
peaceful	peace
personal	person
political	politics, politician
religious	religion
sad	sadness
sale	safety
scientific	science. scientist
southern	south
strong	strength
sunny	sun, sunshine
true	truth
various	variety
violent	violence
weak	wcakness
western	west
wide	width
windy	wind
wooden	wood
young	youth



## 3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

answer
brush
call
cash
change
charge
chat
check
circle
cook
copy
cost

cough
cut
delay
divorce
download
drink
email
end
fall
guide
hate
hope

jump
label
laugh
look
love
mark
matter
microwave
name
need
offer
phone

post
pull
push
queue
rain
repair
reply
request
research
rest
ring
share

shave
snow
star
start
stay
taste
text
tour
use
visit
waste
work

## 4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective
confusion	confuse	confusing, confused
death	die	dead
employment	employ	employed, unemployed
enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyable
excitement	excite	exciting, excited
help	help	helpful
heating	heat	hot
interest	interest	interested, interesting
knowledge	know	known, unknown
location	locate	located
marriage	marry/get married	married
organization	organize	organized
pollution	pollute	polluted
rent	rent	rented
retirement	retire	retired
sleep	sleep	asleep
speech. speaking, speaker	speak	spoken
surprise	surprise	surprised, surprising
writing, writer	write	written
worry	worry	worried, worrying

## 5 Verbs and adjectives

Verb	Adjective
annoy	annoyed, annoying
boil	boiled, boiling
bore	bored, boring
clean	clean
close	closed
complete	complete
correct	correct
empty	empty
freeze	frozen, freezing
frighten	frightened, frightening

Verb	Adjective	
include	included	
irritate	irritated. irritating	
lose	lost	
open	open	
relax relaxed, relaxing		
shut	shut	
tidy	dy tidy	
tire tired, tiring		
wake up	awake	



# Common irregular verbs

Verb	Past simple	Past
		participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
cat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let

Verb	Past simple	Past
		participle
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
overtake	overtook	overtaken
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written



# Answer key

## Sara.English.School

## www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

# Answer key

### Unit 1

- 1 1 two hundred
  - 2 three hundred and forty
  - 3 twenty-two
  - 4 42,500
  - 5 one thousand two hundred
  - 6 two thousand three hundred and fifty
- 2 1 eight
  - 2 twenty
  - 3 sixty-seven
  - 4 fifty
  - 5 a/one hundred and nineteen
  - 6 two hundred and forty-four
  - 7 a/one thousand
  - 8 five thousand and fifty-six
  - 9 eleven thousand three hundred and one
- 3 1 about a/one hundred euros
  - 2 about ten students
  - 3 about thirty years
  - 4 about five hundred
  - 5 about two thousand
  - 6 about eighty people
  - 7 about two hundred and fifty thousand
  - 8 about a/one million

### Unit 2

- 1 1 nine fifteen 5 three forty-five 2 ten twenty-five 6 seven twenty 3 three thirty-five 4 eleven forty-five 8 four forty
- 2 1 quarter past seven
  - 2 half past nine
  - 3 twenty-five to twelve
  - 4 ten to four
  - 5 twenty-five past eight
  - 6 three minutes past one
  - 7 quarter to three
  - 8 seventeen minutes past four
- 4 15 2D 3D 45 55 6D 75 85
- 5 Answers from a British person
  - 1 They open at nine a.m.
  - 2 No, they don't.
  - 3 They close at half past five in the afternoon, and at seven p.m. on Thursdays.
  - 4 They open at about eleven in the morning.
  - 5 They close at different times. Some close at about midnight.
  - 6 They open at nine a.m. and close at half past five in the afternoon.

- 1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
  - 2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
  - 3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
- 2 1 Tuesday
- 6 April
- 2 September3 summer
- 7 February 8 winter
- 4 December
- 9 Thursday
- 5 Saturday
- 10 August
- 3 Answers from a British person
  - 1 September.
  - 2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.
  - 3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.
  - 4 I go and see my family and we have a big lunch together.
  - 5 May 1<sup>st</sup> is a public holiday for workers, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.
- 5 1 third
- 6 sixteenth
- 2 twentieth
- 7 fourteenth 8 thirteenth
- 3 fifth 4 first
- 9 second
- 5 eighth
- 6 1 April the tenth. or The tenth of April.2 April the eleventh. or The eleventh of April.
  - 3 March the fourth. or The fourth of March.
  - 4 April the sixth. or The sixth of April.
  - 5 April the seventeenth. or The seventeenth of April.
  - 6 March the thirty-first. or The thirty-first of March.
  - 7 March the twenty-first. or The twenty-first of March.
  - 8 April the twenty-third. or The twenty-third of April.
- 7 1 The third of February. or February the third.
  - 2 July the fourth. or The fourth of July.
  - 3 The tenth of December. or December the tenth
  - 4 August the twelfth. or The twelfth of August.
  - 5 The fifteenth of January. or January the fifteenth.
  - 6 Nineteen eighty-nine.
  - 7 The twenty-first of May. or May the twenty-first.



- 8 November the thirtieth. or The thirtieth of November.
- 9 The twenty-second of April. or April the twenty-second.
- 10 Twenty fifteen. or Two thousand and fifteen.
- 11 Your own answer
- 12 Your own answer

### Unit 4

### 1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 F

- 2 1 Britain
- 6 Africa

8 Asia

- 2 Europe
- 7 The Middle East
- 3 Central
- 4 Far
- 9 Australasia
- 5 South
- 3 1 France, French
  - 2 Germany, German
  - 3 Spain, Spanish
  - 4 Portugal, Portuguese
  - 5 Italy, Italian
  - 6 The Czech Republic, Czech
  - 7 Poland, Polish
  - 8 Hungary, Hungarian
  - 9 Russia, Russian
  - 10 Greece, Greek
  - 11 Turkey, Turkish
- 4 -ian: Russian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Brazilian, Argentinian, Indian, Canadian, Australian -ish: British, Spanish, Turkish, Polish, English -an: American, German, Korean, Mexican

## Unit 5

- 1 1x 2/ 3x 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ 9 x 10 / 11 x 12 /
- 2 1 board pen
- 4 pencil sharpener
- 2 cassette player
- 5 piece of paper
- 3 noticeboard
- 6 CD player
- 3 Answers from an Argentinian person
  - I've got a rubber. I haven't got a
    - noticeboard.
  - I've got a desk. I've got a table.
- I haven't got a ruler.
- I've got a chair.
- I haven't got a board.
- I haven't got a cassette
- player.

### Unit 6

- 1 1 indefinite 5 past participle
  - 2 noun
- plural
- 3 preposition
- 7 verbs
- 4 an irregular
- 8 adverbs

- 2 1 I 7 Today/quickly

  - 2 lessons 8 asked
  - 3 young 9 spoke
  - 4 a 10 class
  - 5 from/in 11 I think he's in the wrong class.
  - the

### Unit 7

- 1 1f 2q 3a 4d 5b 6e
- 2 1 called 5 right/correct
  - 2 pronounce
- 6 opposite
  - 3 How do
- 7 does
- 4 between
- 8 explain

### Unit 8

- 1 1 What do you do in your country?
  - 2 Where do you come from?
  - 3 Could I have your address?
  - 4 What's your family name?
  - 5 What's your postcode?
  - 6 How old are your children?
  - 7 Have you got any children?
  - 8 What's your first name?
- 2 1 family
- 5 could/can
- 2 first
- 6 postcode 7 do
- 3 from 4 Whereabouts/
- 8 married
- Where exactly?
- 9 old
- 3 Answers from a Greek person
  - 1 Anna 2 Greece
- 5 11363 6 I'm a teacher.
- 3 Athens
- 7 No, I'm single.
- 4 1 Kipseli
- 8 I'm 30.
- 11363 Athens
  - Greece

## Unit 9

- 1 1F 2T 3T 4F 5T 6F 7F 8T 10 F 11 F 12 T
- 2 Your own answers

- 1 1 daughter
- 6 husband
- 2 nephew 3 niece
- 7 grandmother 8 uncle
- 4 sister-in-law
- 9 aunt
- 5 cousin
- 10 relatives
- 2 1 sister
- 7 grandmother
- 2 wife
- 8 granddaughter
- 3 niece
- 9 cousin
- 4 relative
- 10 parent 11 aunt
- 5 daughter 6 sister-in-law
- 4 Your own answers
- 5 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 T

- 6 1 I was born in 1989.
  - 2 We spend a lot of time together.
  - 3 My girlfriend is older than me.
  - 4 There are six of us in my family.
  - 5 I am the youngest in my family.
  - 6 I've got an older/younger brother and a younger/older sister.
- 7 Answers from a Turkish person
  - 1 There are six people in my family.

  - 3 I've got one sister and two brothers. My sister's older than me and my two brothers are younger than me.
  - 4 I spend a lot of time with my sister because she's fun and she lives near me.
  - 5 No. We all live in our own houses but very close to each other.

### Unit 11

- 1 1 lie down 5 sit down 2 fall over 6 get on 3 ride 7 run 4 climb 8 stand up 2 1 stand 6 jumped
- 2 walk 7 rode 3 climb 8 ran, fell 4 dance 9 got, got
  - 5 lie
- 4 1 carry 5 touch 9 hold 2 turn off 6 drop push 10 3 put down 7 pick up shut 4 close 8 break 12 open
- 5 1 touch a bicycle 1, push a bicycle 2
  - 2 pick up a TV 2, turn on a TV 1
  - 3 break a bottle 1, open a bottle 2
  - 4 pull your hair 1, touch your hair 1
  - 5 turn off a radio 1, hold a radio 1
  - 6 drop a ruler 1, break a ruler 2
  - 7 carry a door 2, close a door 1
  - 8 pick up a baby 2, hold a baby 2

### Unit 12

- 1 1F 2T 3T 4F 5T 6T 7F 8T 9T 10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F
- 2 1 wrist 5 shoulder 2 stomach 6 eyes 3 neck 7 bottom
  - 4 finger
- 3 1 chin 6 face 2 stomach 7 nose 3 chest 8 bottom 4 tooth/teeth 9 waist
  - 5 back

## Unit 13

- 1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 F
- 2 1 height 4 weighs 2 good-looking 5 fat 3 slim 6 beautiful
- 4 1 I've got medium-length, short, curly hair. or I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
  - 2 Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy. or Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
  - 3 My sister's hair is short, long, and curly. or My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
  - 4 My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache. or My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache.
  - 5 My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair. or My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.
- 5 1 medium-length, short
  - 2 blonde, black, brown, grey
  - 3 straight, wavy, curly
  - 4 beard, moustache
  - 5 brown
- 6 Answers from a German person
  - 1 It's short.
  - 2 It's red.
  - 3 It's straight.
  - 4 I've got a beard.
  - 5 No, my eyes are blue.
- 7 1b 2e 3i 4h 5c 6f 7a 8q
- 8 Answers from an Argentinian person
  - 1 Pablo (my nephew).
  - 2 Ester (my mother).
  - 3 Ezequiel (my nephew).
  - 4 Berta (my grandmother).
  - 5 Pedro (my father).

  - 6 Sol (my niece).
  - 7 Carlos (my mother's 5th husband).
- 10 The police are looking for Y.
- 11 The other man is in his mid-forties/is middleaged, short and overweight, with short grey hair and a beard.

### Unit 14

1	1	funny	5	clever
		quiet	6	friendly
	3	relaxed	7	laugh
	4	nice		

2 1 unfriendly 5 funny 2 intelligent 6 serious 3 horrible 7 relaxed 4 stupid 8 kind

- 3 1 serious
  - 2 are, fun, horrible/unfriendly
  - 3 What, kind, clever/intelligent
- 4 really friendly, really nice, really funny, really interesting
- 5 1T 2T 3T 4T 5F 6F 7T 8F
- 6 Answers from a British person
  - 1 I'm very sporty.
  - 2 I don't think I'm very relaxed.
  - 3 I'm tidy at work but untidy at home.
  - 4 I'm hardworking most of the time.
  - 5 I'm quiet but I think I'm quite sociable as well.
  - 6 Yes, I think I am.

### Unit 15

- 1 1 They had a baby last year.
  - 2 They split up in January.
  - 3 We have a very good relationship.
  - 4 How did you get to know her?
  - 5 They were together for three years.
  - 6 I went out with him for six months.
- 2 1 have
- 5 ex-
- 2 together
- 6 divorced, partner/
- girlfriend, get 3 couple
- 4 out, up
- 3 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S
- 4 Answers from an Hungarian person
  - 1 My wife.
  - 2 Seven years.
  - 3 At a friend's Christmas party.
  - 4 We have mutual friends.
  - 5 We live together.
  - 6 8ecause we love each other. We're interested in similar things, and we want the same things in life.

## Unit 16

- 1 1 I'm tired.
- 5 I'm boiling.
- 2 I'm nervous.
- 6 I'm ill, or I feel ill. or I don't feel well.
- 3 I'm thirsty.
- 4 I'm hungry.
- 2 1 matter; feel or 'm
  - 2 tired
  - 3 matter; freezing
- 4 boiling nervous
- 6 What's; well
- 4 1 angry
- 6 frightened
- 2 worried
- 7 unhappy
- 3 upset
- 8 embarrassed
- 4 scared
- 9 excited
- 5 surprised
- 5 1 angry
  - 6 happy
  - 2 surprised
- 7 upset or sad or unhappy
- 3 worried
- 8 frightened or scared
- 4 excited
- 9 love
- 5 embarrassed

## Unit 17

- 1 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
- 2 I have breakfast at 8 a.m.
  - 3 I leave home at 8.30 a.m.

  - 4 I finish work at 6 p.m.
  - 5 I have dinner with my family.
  - 6 I go to bed at 11 o'clock.
  - 7 I sleep seven hours a night.
- 2 1 get
  - 2 have
- get
- 5 have
- 3 leave
- 6 qo
- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
  - 1 | get dressed before breakfast.
  - 2 Yes, I do sometimes.
  - 3 In the sitting room.
  - 4 At about 8.15.
  - 5 At about 8.50.
  - 6 My family.
  - 7 At around 11.30.
  - 8 About 8 hours.
- 5 do the shopping once or twice a week go shopping stay in play tennis go to the gym

at the weekend

- come round go for a walk
- 6 1 go 6 late 7 2 round at
  - 3 play 8 gym
  - 4 out or shopping 9 do, early 10 see 5 During, in
- 7 1D 25 3D 4D 55 6D
- 8 1 Haruko gets up early every day.
  - 2 Hiro hardly ever goes to the gym.
  - 3 Haruko always stays in.
  - 4 Hiro studies all day.
  - 5 Haruko never has a shower in the morning.
  - 6 Hiro occasionally goes to the cinema.
- 9 Answers from a British person
  - 1 True. I always have a shower before breakfast.
  - 2 False. I occasionally go out on Friday evening.
  - 3 False, I sometimes listen to music in the evening.
  - 4 False. I never study on Sunday.
  - 5 False. I often watch TV at the weekend.
  - 6 False. I sometimes work in the evening.
  - 7 True. I usually go shopping on Monday.
  - 8 False. I never go to the gym after dinner.

### Unit 18

- 1 1 jacket 6 T-shirt 2 trousers 7 dress 3 jumper 8 jeans 4 coat 9 sweater
  - 5 raincoat
- 3 1 F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 F 11 T 12 F
- 5 1 gloves 4 sandals 2 umbrella 5 hat 3 jeans 6 jeans
- 6 1 Give me the sock.
  - 2 Not possible.
  - 3 I've got one pair of sandals.
  - 4 Not possible.
  - 5 She's wearing my scarf.
  - 6 Where is my glove?
  - 7 Not possible.
  - 8 Not possible.
- 7 Answers from a German person
  - Light grey jeans, a blue T-shirt and black shoes.
  - 2 I normally wear casual clothes at the weekend.
  - 3 No, I only wear leather shoes.
  - 4 I wear sunglasses in summer.
  - 5 I wear a hat and a scarf in winter when it's cold. I wear a watch daily.

### Unit 19

- 1 1 short 5 loose 2 comfortable 6 expensive 3 small 7 smart 4 casual 8 long 2 1 uncomfortable 5 small 2 nice 6 long 3 casual 7 loose 4 expensive 8 lovely
- 3 1 short 5 loose
  - 2 uncomfortable 6 horrible/awful/ 3 casual terrible
  - 2 Casual
  - 4 expensive
- 5 1 a or a size 4 fit, too 2 medium 5 take 3 wrong 6 fit, too
- 6 1 The shirt is too small/tight.
  - 2 The trousers are too long.
  - 3 The hat's too big.
- 7 1 Where do I pay?
  - 2 No thanks, I'll leave it.
  - 3 Excuse me, where's the changing room?
  - 4 Can I try this dress on?
  - 5 I'm looking for a pair of trousers.
  - 6 Do you need any help?

- 8 1 on 5 room 2 desk 6 help 3 them 7 lovely/nice 4 card 8 pay
- 9 Answers from a Turkish person
  - 1 No, I don't.
  - 2 I buy clothes about four times a year.
  - 3 I bought some very nice walking shoes.
  - 4 Yes, I always do.
  - 5 Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.
  - 6 I usually pay by debit card.

### Unit 20

- The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty.
  - 2 Could you put in your PIN, please? or Could you enter your PIN, please?
  - 3 She paid for the dress in cash.
  - 4 I've only got a 50 pound note.
  - 5 They're €6 for each.
  - 6 Have you got a bank account?
  - 7 Three books. That's €42 altogether.
  - 8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 change.
- 2 1 put in/enter 5 each
  - 2 PIN 6 altogether
  - 3 receipt 7 note
  - 4 cost 8 change
- 3 1 price 5 fare
  - 2 spend 6 earn
  - 3 saved 7 sold
  - 4 won 8 bill
- 4 1 bought 4 earned
  - 2 spent 5 won
  - 3 sold 6 saved
- 5 50.0
- 5 1 online 4 price 2 bill 5 fares
  - 2 Dill 5 Tares
  - 3 free 6 earn
    - o free to earn
- 6 Answers from a Greek person
  - 1 Very rarely.
  - 2 Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.
  - 3 Yes, most of the time it is.
  - 4 It's about one euro.
  - 5 Yes, they're cheap.
  - 6 No, women earn less than men.

- 1 1 c 2 i 3 h 4 j 5 b 6 a 7 e 8 f 9 g
- 2 1 rain 4 foggy 2 sunny 5 wind 3 snows 6 cloudy



- 4 1 showers 4 minutes 2 lightning 5 damp 3 dry, very hot 6 breeze
- 5 1 There was heavy rain last night.
  - 2 It was humid yesterday.
  - 3 There was a shower in the afternoon.
  - 4 The weather's changeable.
  - 5 it's dry today.
  - 6 We had a storm.
- 6 Answers from an Argentinian person
  - 1 We have a lot of showers in the winter.
  - 2 In winter it's not always freezing at night.
  - 3 The weather is the same all summer. True. It is hot and humid.
  - 4 Once or twice a year we have heavy rain for 24 hours.
  - 5 It only snows in the west of the country.
  - 6 Our winters are usually cold and wet.
  - 7 We often have thunder and lightning. True.
  - 8 It is usually hot and humid in summer.

### Unit 22

1

1 hurts	7 flu
2 've got	8 Has
3 feel	9 've got
4 've got	10 Has
5 feel	11 's
_	42 1 1

- 6 hurts 12 haven't got
- 2 1 cough 5 stomach-ache 2 temperature 6 sick 3 hurt 7 flu 4 matter; well 8 throat
- 4 1 You should to go to the chemist's.
  - 2 Go and lie you down for a while.
  - 3 Go and see your GP doctor. OR Go and see your GP doctor.
  - 4 Stay in the bed and don't do anything.
  - 5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
  - 6 You should go and to see your doctor.
  - 7 You shouldn't <del>don't</del> go to work today.
  - 8 Lie down for the a while.
- 5 Possible answers
  - 1 You should go and lie down for a while.
  - 2 You should go to the pharmacy.
  - 3 You should stay in bed for a day or two.
  - 4 You should go and lie down for a while.
  - 5 You should go and see your GP.

### Unit 23

1	1	cotton wool	4	antiseptic	7	cream
	2	tissues	5	plasters	8	medicine
	_		_			

- 3 correct 6 pharmacist
- 2 1 a sore throat
  - 2 take these tablets
  - 3 for toothache, please
  - 4 wool
  - 5 some plasters, please
  - 6 for your finger
  - 7 this medicine it's very good
  - 8 tablet three times a day
  - 9 cream
  - 10 help you

### Unit 24

- 1 1 Pork, because it's a meat.
  - 2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
  - 3 Tuna, because it's a fish.
  - 4 Salmon, because it's a fish.
  - 5 Cow, because it's only an animal.

2	1	beef	3	tuna	5	crab
	2	pork	4	duck		

- 3 1 pork 3 salmon 5 bacon 2 lamb 4 tuna 6 chicken
- 4 Your own answers

### Unit 25

- 1 grapes, melon, lemon, avocado, strawberry, cherry, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple
- 2 1 sweet 5 small 2 bitter 6 good 3 red 7 sweet 4 green 8 big 4 1 carrot 5 beans 2 onion 6 courgette 3 pepper 7 tomato 4 cabbage 8 garlic
- 5 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6T 7F
- 6 Your own answers

1	1	1	7	1
	2	1	8	bread or some
	3	butter or some		bread
		butter	9	1
	4	1	10	rice or some rice
	5	cheese or some	11	jam or some
		cheese		jam
	6	1	12	1



2	1	milk	7	butter	
	2	some cheese	8	rice	
		sugar	9	a large bar of	
	4	biscuits		chocolate	
	5	some olive oil	10	noodles	
	6	six eggs			

4 1 T	2 F	3 F	4 T	5 F	6 T	7 F	8 T
9 F	101						

5	1	box	6	packet
_		jar	_	grams
		bottle		packet
	1	carton/hottle	Q	litre/hottle/ca

4 carton/bottle 9 litre/bottle/carton

5 kilo 10 bottle/litre

7 1 got, many 3 Could/Can, just 2 much, else, that's 4 like, ripe

8 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?

2 I'd like some sugar, please.3 Have you got any ham?

4 How much cheese would you like?

5 That's just over half a kilo.

6 How many oranges would you like?

## Unit 27

- 1 1 roll, baguette, sandwich, toasted sandwich
  - 2 cappuccino, tea, orange juice, espresso, black coffee

2	1	bread	6	couple
	2	sandwich	7	white
	3	chocolate	8	white
	4	coffee	9	have

5 take away

- 3 1 I'd like two coffees, please.
  - 2 To drink here or take away?
  - 3 To drink here. And a toasted ham sandwich.
  - 4 OK. It will be a couple of minutes.
  - 5 Have a seat, please.

## Unit 28

1	1	fork	9	wine
	2	spoon	10	red
	3	napkin	11	white
	4	plate	12	salt
	5	bowl	13	black pepper
	6	bottle	14	bottles
	7	mineral water	15	oil
	8	glasses	16	vinegar

2 Answers from an Argentinian person On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have salt, pepper, napkins, oil and vinegar.

We don't usually have a bottle of mineral water, a bowl or a glass of red wine.

4 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 F 10 T

5	1	cream	5	course
	2	steak	6	sauce
	3	salad	7	done
	4	soup	8	boiled

6 Your own answers

8 1	some more	5	of course
2	to order	6	the
3	another	7	1'11
4	meal	8	certainly
9 1	have	6	dessert
2	how	7	<b>1</b> 1
3	course	8	bill
1	cnackling	0	curolcortain

4 sparkling 9 sure/certainly

5 some

## Unit 29

1 1 How many stops is it to the railway station?

2 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?

3 How long does it take to the railway station?

4 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?

5 Where do I get off for the cinema?

6 Does the 24 go to the park?

7 How often does the 24 run? 8 Which is the last stop for the 16?

2 1 Five 5 At the next stop 2 The 16 or the 24 6 No, it doesn't 3 About ten 7 Every ten minutes

4 Yes, it does 8 The railway station

3 1 stop 6 timetable 2 next/second 7 run 3 last/final 8 runs 4 get off 9 every 5 goes/runs 10 takes

4 Answers from a British person

1 Yes, at the end of the road.

2 The 9 and the 15.

3 They run about every 15 minutes.

4 I don't get the bus very often, but I sometimes get it to the town centre.

5 Four.

6 Five to ten minutes.

### Unit 30

1 1 a slow train 4 the 7 o'clock train 2 get off the train 5 a seat 3 catch a train 6 at a (railway) station

2 1 fare 5 last/next
2 carriage 6 waited/wait
3 missed 7 timetable
4 get/take 8 journey

- 3 1 advance 5 office 2 return 6 train 7 seat 3 direct
  - 4 London
- 4 1 change 5 to 2 leaves 6 single 3 platform 7 advance
  - 4 gets
- 5 Answers from a German person
  - 1 A month ago.
  - 2 I went to Berlin to see friends.
  - 3 I paid €75.50 for the ticket.
  - 4 Yes, I always do, because you get reduced
  - 5 It was a direct journey from Hannover to

### Unit 31

- 1 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the bank?
  - 2 Go along here and turn left.
  - 3 Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
  - 4 It's the third turning on the right.
  - 5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
  - 6 Turn left into Foster Road.
- 2 1 turning 5 going 2 much 6 on 3 left/right/corner 7 here 4 me 8 way
- 3 1
  - 1 get 2 straight 3 turning 4 left 5 much

  - 1 Excuse 2 near 3 along 4 take 5 turning 6 right 7 opposite 8 Thanks

  - 1 way 2 Turn 3 Into 4 corner 5 right

### Unit 32

- 1 1 station 5 crossing 2 road 6 park 3 camera jam
  - 4 sign
- 2 1 station 6 speed
  - 7 roundabout 2 main 3 sign 8 traffic 9 pavement 4 park 5 crossing 10 junction
- 4 1 motorway 4 speed limit 2 rush hour 5 accident 3 overtake 6 a quiet road
- 5 1 busy 3 far
  - 2 lane, overtake 4 take, drive

- 6 Answers from a Turkish person
  - 1 Three.
  - 2 120kph.
  - 3 Not speed cameras, but police radar.
  - 4 No. We drive on the right, the steering wheel is on the left.
  - 5 9 a.m. and 6 p.m.

### Unit 33

- 1 1f 2h 3j 4c 5b 6e 7i 8g 9a
- 2 1 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
  - 2 in/out
  - 3 do not disturb/ring bell
  - 4 parking/entry/exit/vacancies

  - 6 do not disturb/ring bell
  - 7 declare

### Unit 34

- 1 1 Porto Alegre 6 Colombia 2 Brasilia 7 Rio de Janeiro 8 Mountain 3 Amazon 4 Pico da Neblina 9 inland 5 Argentina 10 coast
- 2 Possible answers
  - 1 It's the longest river in Brazil.
  - 2 It's the highest mountain in Brazil.
  - 3 It's the capital.
  - 4 It's a town in the south.
  - 5 It has a border with the south of Brazil.
  - 6 It's a famous city on the coast.
- 3 Answers from a Greek person
  - 1 Athens. It's in the north/centre of Greece.
  - 2 Thessaloniki, Patras and Corinth.
  - 3 Yes, it has borders with Albania, FYROM (Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia), Bulgaria and Turkey.
  - 6 The islands.
  - 7 The Parthenon and the ancient theatre of the Acropolis.

- 1 1 bridge 5 park 2 square 6 mosque 7 building 3 castle
  - 4 cathedral
- 2 1 temple 5 park
  - 2 bridge 6 statue, square 3 market 7 castle, palace
  - 4 museum 8 place

4 Size: a small village, a large city, a mediumsized town

Location: on the coast, on the River Duero, south-west of the capital

Population: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000

Interesting facts: famous for historic buildings, an industrial town

- 5 1 of 5 population 2 in 6 under 3 of 7 industrial 4 on 8 historic
- 6 Answer from a British person 8ath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England. It's on the River Avon. The population is just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist place in England, with lots of historic buildings, including a famous abbey (like a cathedral) and many museums.
- 7 1 no 4 no 7 no 2 yes 5 yes 3 yes 6 yes
- 8 1 cosmopolitan 4 nightlife 2 dangerous 5 crowded/busy 3 do 6 polluted
- 9 Answers from a Hungarian person (who lives in Budapest)
  - 1 It's pretty safe, although we had some riots recently, but these are very unusual.
  - 2 It's a big city, and there's a lotto do: there are cinemas, restaurants, cafés, shopping centres, parks and museums – whatever you're interested in.
  - 3 It's a very busy city. There are two million people living there, and thousands commute there for work.
  - 4 There are many popular clubs, bars, allnight cafés, late cinemas, concerts and other cultural events.
  - 5 Yes, it is.
  - 6 Some people think it's noisy and dirty, but I love it because it's got everything.

### Unit 36

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5T 6T 7F 8F 9T
- 2 1 valley, hill 2 grass
- 5 own, dog, horse 6 crops, grow
- 3 few trees
- of crops, gro farmers
- 4 fields

- 3 Answers from an Argentinian person
  - 1 Neither, I live in the city centre.
  - 2 Yes, there is a natural lake close to my home.
  - 3 No, I can't.
  - 4 Yes, they are on the pavement.
  - 5 There is a football pitch.
  - 6 No.
  - 7 Wheat, soy and corn.
  - 8 Yes, I know a few.
- 5 1D 2D 3D 45 5D 65 7D 85
- 6 1 I often buy flowers.
  - 2 I love the countryside.
  - 3 I'm very healthy.
  - 4 I see lots of birds in my area.
  - 5 Our public transport is wonderful.
  - 6 I'm often alone in the evening.
  - 7 I eat fresh fruit every day.
  - 8 I never feel lonely.
- 7 Answers from a Japanese person
  - 1 False. I don't buy flowers.
  - 2 True.
  - 3 True.
  - 4 True, but not the pretty ones. I only see pigeons and crows.
  - 5 True.
  - 6 False. My family is normally with me.
  - 7 False. I only eat fresh fruit a few times a week.
  - 8 True.

- 1 1 butcher's 4 deli 2 baker's 5 chemist's 3 paper shop 6 newsagent's
- 2 Possible answers
  - 1 sandwiches, bread, coffee, cheese, ham
  - 2 medicine, aspirins, soap, shampoo
  - 3 fruit, vegetables, meat, fish, bread, books
  - 4 newspapers, cigarettes, chocolates
  - 5 bread, cakes
  - 6 CDs, DVDs
- 4 1F 2T 3F 4T 5F 6T 7T 8F
- 5 1 shopping 4 convenient 2 prefer 5 deliver 3 queue 6 get
- 6 Answers from a British person
  - 1 We usually do the shopping on Saturday morning.
  - 2 I prefer small shops, but I have to use the supermarket a lot.
  - 3 Yes, often.
  - 4 Yes, they are.
  - 5 One or two of them deliver, but I always carry things home myself.
  - 6 At the market.



### Unit 38

11F 2T	3 F 4 F	5 F	6 T	7 T	8 T	9 T
2 1 baserr	nent	6	garde	n		
2 block	of flats	7	steps			
3 groun	d floor	8	neigh	bour		
4 front	door	9	balco	ny		
5 stairs		10	town	centr	е	

4 study, view, modern, living room, toilet, kitchen, home, dining room, upstairs, bedroom, utility room, parking, bathroom

5	1	living	8	kitchen
	2	bathroom	9	study
	3	view		Upstairs
	4	garage	11	bedrooms
	5	garden	12	bathrooms
	6	outside	13	parking
	7	views	14	outside

6 Answers from a German person

- 1 I live in a flat.
- 2 On the first floor.
- 3 No.
- 4 I look into the courtyard.
- 5 No, but there are always free spaces.
- 6 I have a living room, a bedroom, a dining room, a guest room, a bathroom, a kitchen and a big hallway.

### Unit 39

1 1	washing machine	7	frying pan
2	dishwasher, sink	8	freezer
3	saucers, cupboard	9	full
4	shelf/shelves	10	microwave, hob
5	bin	11	tap
6	oven	12	saucepan

2 Answers from a Turkish person My washing machine is in the bathroom.

4	1	shopping	6	puts
	2	put (everything) away	7	takes
		empty	8	cook
		clean	9	washing-up
	5	make		ironina

5 Answers from a Greek person

- 1 My partner.
- 2 I do.
- 3 I do.
- 4 I do.
- 5 My partner.
- 6 We both do.

### Unit 40

1	1	mirror	4	bidet
	2	desk	5	wardrobe
	3	blanket	6	towel

2	1	bedside table	7	wardrobe
	2	mirror	8	bidet
	3	bath	9	blanket
	4	chest of drawers	10	sheet
	5	washbasin	11	towel
	6	toilet	12	shower

3 Answers from an Argentinian person In my bedroom, there's a double bed, a bedside table, a chest of drawers, a chair and a wardrobe.

In my bathroom, there's a shower, a washbasin, a toilet, a long mirror and two towels.

5	1	do, brush	4	shave

2 have 5 washes, shampoo

3 puts on 6 tissues

61a 2a 3-4a 5-6an 7-8a,-

7 Your own answers

### Unit 41

1	1 T	2 T	3 F	4 T	5 F	6 T	7 T	8 T
	9 T	10 T	11	T 1	2 F	13 T	14 F	

2 1	floor	7	bookshelve
2	carpet	8	light
	cushion	9	curtains
4	radiator	10	armchair
5	coffee table	11	rug
6	ceiling	12	fireplace

3 Answers from a Japanese person

- 1 We've got one large window and one small window in our living room.
- 2 No, we've got air conditioning.
- 3 We've got wooden floorboards and a tatami mat.
- 4 There are a few pictures on the walls.
- 5 On the ceiling.
- 6 We've got a large sofa, a dinner table, a TV, a cupboard and a few cushions.

1	1	history	5	physics
	2	geography	6	maths
	3	biology	7	music
	4	design	8	literature

- 2 1 PE/physical education
  - 2 ICT/information communication technology
  - 3 literature
  - 4 modern languages
  - 5 RE/religious education
  - 6 chemistry
  - 7 art



- 3 Your own answers
- 5 1 c 2 h 3 g 4 i 5 a 6 e 7 b 8 d 9 f 10 j
- 6 1 start 4 leave, get 2 uniform 5 state, private
  - 3 pupils, secondary
- 7 Answers from a German person
  - 1 Usually at the age of six, sometimes five.
  - 2 We don't have school uniforms in Germany.
  - 3 At the age of ten.
  - 4 It depends on the kind of school they are attending. The earliest is 15.
  - 5 There are state schools and private schools. The majority of children go to state schools.
- 8 1 no 3 2 5 E 2 5 4 A 6 C
- 9 1 take 4 results 2 do 5 badly, failed
  - 3 well, grade 6 worst
- 10 Answers from a Turkish person
  - 1 They were 50 minutes.
  - 2 Yes.
  - 3 When I was eleven years old. I was in a special school and I had to pass an exam to get into it.
  - 4 I took one exam with many sections like Turkish language, maths, science, geography, history and general knowledge.
  - 5 Yes.

### Unit 43

- 1 1 do 5 A graduate 2 term 6 Unfortunately 3 BSc 7 after
  - 4 library
- 2 1 degree 4 fortunately 2 do/write 5 again 3 do, PhD 6 last
- 3 Answers from a Greek person
  - 1 Four years.
  - 2 Two or three years.
  - 3 About ten weeks.
  - 4 About twelve weeks.
  - 5 Yes, always.
- 4 1 doctor 5 economist 2 engineer 6 politician 3 architect 7 journalist
  - 4 psychologist 8 businessman/manager

1 lawyer P / politics DS
2 architecture DS 8 engineer P
3 computer science DS 9 medicine DS
4 software engineer P 10 economics DS
5 psychology DS 11 IT manager P
6 business studies DS 12 reporter P

6 businesswoman

### Unit 44

1 1 vet

- 7 2 shop assistant secretary 8 dentist 3 nurse 4 old 9 chef 5 hasn't 10 builder 7 builder 2 1 businessman 2 shop assistant 8 lorry driver 3 hairdresser 9 cleaner 10 housewife 4 secretary 5 police officer 11 self-employed 6 retired 12 soldier
- 3 1 a hairdresser 5 retired
  - 2 a pilot 6 self-employed 3 unemployed 7 a teacher 4 the boss/a manager 8 a chef
- 4 Answers from a Japanese person
  - 1 I'm a secretary.
  - 2 My friend Helen is the head chef at the George Hotel.
  - 3 I don't know anyone who's a hairdresser.
  - 4 My mother is unemployed.
  - 5 I don't know anyone who's retired.
  - 6 My friend Carla is an English teacher.
  - 7 My friend Dave is a pilot.
  - 8 My father's friend Mr Kitamura is a
  - 9 My father and brother are businessmen.
  - 10 Mr Karasawa is my boss.

- 1 1 hours a day 6 she work
  2 a factory 7 an American airline
  3 office 8 earn much
  4 work for 9 job
  5 does he earn 10 ten to six
- 2 1 part 5 hours 2 a 6 day 3 earn 7 year 4 low 8 salary
- 3 Answers from a British person
  - 1 I'm a reporter.
  - 2 I work for a local newspaper.
  - 3 I work in an office, and I go out and talk to people.
  - 4 I work very long hours, often 12 or 14 hours a day.



4 1 does makes organizate organize 6 correct

et 8

- 2 meet meeting 7 3 type typing about
- 4 correct 5 1 meet
  - 6 colleagues 2 answer 7 discuss 3 send/write 8 organize 4 spend 9 clients 5 making 10 have

### Unit 46

- 1 1 screen 5 monitor 2 mouse keyboard 7 3 personal computer disk 4 memory stick 8 webcam
- 2 1 speaker 5 memory stick, disk 2 hard copies 6 mouse 3 hard drive 7 mouse mat 4 laptop 8 screen
- 3 Answers from a German person
  - 1 I have an old PC and a new Mac.
  - 2 Yes. I use my printer almost every day.
  - 3 One of my computers is a laptop. I keep it in the guest room.
  - 4 Yes, I have photos of friends, family and my holidays on the computer.
  - 5 No, don't have a webcam.
- 5 1g 2a 3e 4h 5b 6f 7c
- 6 1 clicked 5 cut 2 beginning, end 6 save 3 make/save 7 open 4 did 8 middle

### Unit 47

- 1 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F 7T 8F
- 2 1 I must reply to Jean's message.
- 2 Did you get/receive my message?
  - 3 I received an email from Li today.
  - 4 Have you checked your emails/messages?
  - 5 Please forward the attachment to John.
  - 6 She sent Tia an email yesterday.
- 3 Answers from a Turkish person
  - 1 Almost every day.
    - 2 My colleagues, family and friends.
  - 3 Commercial, healthy life emails.
  - 4 Yes they do. They send me pictures, poems and jokes.
  - 5 Yes.
- 4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S 9 D 10 S
- 4 broadband 5 1 search 2 download 5 website 3 on/using 6 visit

- 6 Answers from a Greek person
  - 1 annaingreece@yahoo.com
  - 2 Very rarely.
  - 3 It's www.in.gr
  - 4 Google.
  - 5 No.
  - 6 I use the internet almost every day.
  - 7 No. never.
  - 8 Yes, I download it onto my PC.
  - 9 I use Google.

### Unit 48

- 1 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A
- 2 1 I hate chocolate.
  - 2 They don't like doing homework very
  - 3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.
  - 4 I quite like shopping.
  - 5 She doesn't like driving.
  - 6 I think tennis is OK.
  - 7 I really like going out with friends.
  - 8 She loves watching sport.
- 3 Answers from a German person
  - 1 I love watching TV.
  - 2 I really like studying English.
  - 3 I love driving.
  - 4 I don't like shopping for clothes.
  - 5 I like cleaning the house.
  - 6 I quite like writing emails.
  - 7 I like talking on the phone.
  - 8 I love going to the cinema.
- 4 1 I enjoy watching TV.
  - 2 I'm not interested in politics.
  - 3 My favourite film is 'Tootsie'.
  - 4 She prefers reading to writing.
  - 5 He's a fantastic boss.
  - 6 Was the party good fun?
  - 7 It's a boring programme.
  - 8 Are you keen on tennis?
- 5 1 fun 5 keen
- 2 prefer 6 enjoy
  - 3 favourite 7 interesting
  - 4 interested
- 6 Answers from a Turkish person
  - 1 Yes it is.
  - 2 I like both.
  - 3 Istanbul.
  - 4 Yes. I like swimming.
  - 5 Yes.
  - 6 Yes.
  - 7 Yes.

SARA

#### Sara. English. School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### Unit 49

- 1 football pitch, tennis racket, basketball, ice hockey, three nil
- 2 1 T 2 T
  - 3 F You score goals in ice hockey, or You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
  - 4 F You play football on a pitch. or You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
  - 5 F You play ice hockey with sticks. or You play tennis with rackets.
  - 6 T 7 T
  - 8 F You play rugby with a rugby ball. or You play ice hockey with a puck.
- 3 1 game 4 score/result, nil 2 basketball 5 pitch, court 3 games, set
- 4 1 match/game 5 beat 2 against 6 won 3 top 7 drew 4 to 8 beat 6 beat 5 1 match/game 7 scored 2 against 3 lost 8 won 4 drew; with 9 leading

10 score

6 Your own answers

5 time

#### Unit 50

1	1	another place	5	another place
	2	inside	6	inside
	3	inside	7	another place
	4	inside	8	inside
2	1	go	6	spend
	2	collects	7	go
	3	play	8	does
	4	does	9	makes
	5	play		

- 3 Your own answers
- 5 1 True. 2 False. Playing a musical instrument is popular in Russia.
  - 3 False. Dima plays the guitar.
  - 4 False. Veronica's favourite hobby is drawing.
  - 5 True.
  - 6 False. Alexandra's quite good at shooting.
  - 7 False. Veronica sings in the shower.
  - 8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

- 6 Answers from a Japanese person
  - 1 I love exercising and cooking.
  - 2 Older people like watching TV, gossiping and playing gateball (a Japanese game).
  - 3 Younger people like karaoke and shopping.
  - 4 I never listen to classical music.
  - 5 No. I can't play a musical instrument.
  - 6 No. I'm a bad singer.

#### Unit 51

1 1	2004	4	album
2	able	5	Alex Turner
3	two	6	drums
2 1	group	5	album
2	lead	6	chart
3	drummer	7	known
4	single	8	download

- 3 Answers from a British person
  - 1 The 8eatles.
  - 2 Paul McCartney: lead singer and bass guitar, John Lennon: lead singer and guitar, George Harrison: guitar, Ringo Starr: drums.
  - 3 In 1962.
  - 4 Hey Jude.

4 1 conductor

2 orchestra

5 Sergeant Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band.

5 cello

6 composer

6 Eleanor Rigby.

_	OI CITCS EI G	•	Composci
3	classical	7	perform
4	concert	8	pianist
5 1	orchestra	6	opera singer
2	conductor	7	composer
3	pianist	8	by
4	violinist	9	concert, performing/
_	100 4		

#### 5 cellist singing

#### Unit 52

1	1	thriller	4	cartoon
	2	comedy	5	love story
	3	action film	6	horror film

#### 21c 2f 3a 4b 5e

3	1	romantic	3	frightening/scary
	2	violent	4	funny
5	1	kind	6	actors
	2	about	7	director
	3	reviews	8	on
	4	in	9	see
	5	stars		



#### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

- 6 Answers from a Japanese person
  - I like comedies a lot.
  - 2 'The Holiday'.
  - 3 At my local cinema, 'Nankai Cinema'.
  - 4 Jude Law and Cameron Diaz.
  - 5 Nancy Meyers.
  - 6 It's a love story.

#### Unit 53

#### 1 1D 2S 3D 4S 5D 6S 7D

- 5 wars 2 1 magazines
  - opinion(s) 2 report 6
  - 3 events/news celebrities
- 4 disasters
- 4 1 in 6
  - 7 of, on 2 the
  - 3 on 8 believe
    - 4 out 9 of
  - 5 programme
- 5 1 watch, saw/watched
  - 2 believe/think, none
  - 3 news, happened
  - 4 listen, heard/listened to
  - 5 paper/newspaper
  - 6 forecast
  - 7 watch, much
- 6 Your own answers

#### Unit 54

- 5 hire 1 1 abroad 2 arrange 6 find
  - 7 packed 3 might
  - 4 get 8 book
- 2 1 abroad 6 currency
- 7 insurance 2 flight(s)
  - 3 accommodation 8 might
  - 4 booked/arranged/decided 9 pack
  - 5 get 10 find

#### Unit 55

- 4 tourists 1 1 staff
  - 5 facilities 2 recommended
  - 3 delicious 6 minibar
- 2 1 stav 5 satellite
  - 2 staff 6 conditioning, heating
  - 3 facilities 7 quests
  - 4 minibar 8 recommend

- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
  - I stayed in a ryokan in Shikoku.
  - 1 One night.
  - 2 Yes, very helpful.
  - No. It was not as good as I expected. 3
  - 4 Yes, it did.
  - 5 No, it didn't.
  - 6 It had air conditioning but not central heating.
  - 7 Yes. I talked to a lady in the public bath.
  - 8 Yes, I can. It was a good hotel.
- 5 €60 4 1 no
  - 6 no 2 yes
  - 7 3 yes no
  - 4 no 8 yes
- 5 1 like 9 included
- 2 book 10 air
- 3 double 11 afraid
- 4 twin 12 shame
- 5 en suite 13 mind
- 6 shower 14 Right/OK/Fine/
- Great/Good 7 fine/great
- 15 details 8 a

- 1 1 suitcase 7 boarding card 8 window seat 2 luggage
  - 9 ticket 3 aisle seat
  - 10 scales 4 hand luggage
  - 11 trolley 5 good flight
  - 6 airport
- 3 1 no no 5 2
  - 2 no
  - 3 yes
- 4 1 call, gate 4 check-in 5 depart/leave 2 boarding

  - 3 delayed
- 5 2 (c) fasten your seat belt
  - 3 (h) the plane takes off
  - 4 (d) the plane lands
  - 5 (e) get off the plane
  - 6 (i) someone checks your passport
  - 7 (a) collect your luggage
  - 8 (b) go through customs
  - 9 (f) leave the terminal
- 6 1 lands
  - 2 your seat belt
  - 3 customs, passport control
  - 4 luggage, baggage reclaim
  - 5 get on, get off
- 7 Answers from a British person
  - 1 Two or three times a year.
  - 2 I usually read a book or magazine.
  - 3 An aisle seat.
  - 4 A small bag and my laptop.



#### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com Sara.English.School

#### Unit 57

1 1 rent 5 sea 2 swimming costume 6 perfect 3 shorts relax 7 4 apartment 8 sunbathe 2 1 beach 4 so/two 2 got/took, went flew 5 3 rented, resort 6 lie

#### Unit 58

1 1 go take 2 book 5 guided 3 visit 6 go on 2 1 took, typical 4 art 2 should, round 5 went, guide 3 got, map

3 Your own answers

#### Unit 59

1 1a 2c 3d 4b 5e

2 1 Sign 4 rate 5 per 2 Change 3 currency 6 cash

3 Answers from a British person

1 The pound sterling.

2 £1 = \$1.84 at the moment.

3 At a bank or a bureau de change.

4 Yes, often.

5 They are usually inside or outside banks, at the supermarket, in stations and petrol stations.

4 1 deliver letters

2 the name, address and postcode

3 to the post office

4 on the scales

5 a stamp

6 the postman

7 a letter, a parcel, a postcard

5 1 Is there a letter/post box near here?

2 Can you put it on the scales?

3 Can I have three stamps for Argentina?

4 Where can/do I post this letter?

5 How much is a postcard to Russia?

6 Can you buy envelopes at the post office?

#### Unit 60

1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.

2 Max, this is Hanna, or Hanna, this is Max.

3 Bye. I hope to see you again. or I hope to see you again. Bye.

4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. or Nice to meet you. Goodbye.

2 1 nice, hi/hello

2 hope, again, goodbye/bye

3 is, Hello/Hi, to meet/see you, Hello/Hi

4 goodbye/bye, to meet/see you, Bye/ Goodbye

3 1 See you again.

6 How are things? 7 See you on Sunday.

2 I must go now. 3 See you later.

8 I've got to go now.

4 He's very well. 5 See you soon.

9 That's fine.

4 1 well, bad, how's, fine/very well/not bad

2 've got to, later, that's, then

5 1 Good morning, Morning

2 Good evening, Evening

3 Good afternoon, Afternoon

4 Goodbye/Goodnight, Bye/Bye bye/Night

#### Unit 61

1 1i 2h 3g 4d 5j 6c 7f 8e 9a

2 1 Have a nice/good day, evening, weekend, holiday, journey, time

2 Happy Christmas, Easter, New Year, birthday

3 Goodnight! Good luck! Well done! Welcome home!

#### Unit 62

1 1 How often do you go there?

2 What kind of music do you like?

3 What does he do?

4 How long have you lived there?

5 What's wrong with Peter?

6 Who does this belong to?

7 What's his flat like?

8 Why don't you like her?

2 a 4 b 5 c 7 d 1 e 6 f 3 g 2

3 1 often 4 How/What 2 Whose 5 long 3 What 6 Who

4 1 What 4 many 2 long nearest

3 time 6 seeing

5 1 far 5 close/shut 2 many 6 worth 3 Which 7 nearest 4 What

6 Answers from a Turkish person 1 In Adana, Turkey.

2 Half of my life.

3 Capadoccia and the coast.

4 Three hours in a car.

5 Asma Alti (a kebab house in Adana).

8 recommend

### O Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### Unit 63

- 1 1 Can you lend me a pen? ~ Yes, of course.
  - 2 Could you bring the books here, please? ~ Yes, no problem.
  - 3 Could you possibly wait here a few minutes? ~ I'm afraid I can't.
  - 4 Lia, can you change places with Maris, please? ~ Yes, sure.
- 2 Possible answers
  - 1 A Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?
    - B Yes, sure.
  - 2 A Luca, can you change places with Maria, please?
    - 8 Yes, no problem.
  - 3 A Could you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?
    - B I'm afraid I can't.
  - 4 A Can you lend me a pencil, please?
    - B Yes, sure.
  - S A Could you possibly wait in the classroom a few minutes?
    - B Yes, no problem.
- 3 Possible answers
  - 1 Is it all right if I use this dictionary?
  - 2 Do you mind/Is it all rightif I make a coffee?
  - 3 Could I stay for another ten minutes? or Is it OK/all right/if I stay another ten minutes? or Do you mind if I stay another ten minutes?
  - 4 Is it OK if I close the window?
  - 5 Can I borrow your book?
  - 6 Yes, sure/no problem/go ahead/that's fine.
  - 7 I'm afraid I need it.
  - 8 Is it all right to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, of course/no problem/go ahead/ that's fine.
- 4 Possible answers
  - 1 Do you mind if I go at one o'clock today?
  - 2 Could I borrow a rubber?
  - 3 Is it OK if I go to the toilet?
  - 4 Is it all right if I sit in a different seat?
- 5 OK; Yes, no problem; Yes, of course; Go ahead; Yes, that's fine.

#### Unit 64

- 1 1 Would you like to come round later?
  - 2 Yes, I'd love to.
  - 3 Do you want to go out for dinner?
  - 4 That sounds lovely.
  - 5 I'm afraid I can't.
  - 6 That would be nice.
  - 7 Do you want to come to a party?
  - 8 I'm sorry, but I'm busy tonight.

- 2 1 A Would you like to go out for dinner/a meal?
  - B Yes, great!
  - 2 A Do you want to come round for a coffee?
    - B I'm afraid I can't.
  - 3 A Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
    - B Yes, that sounds lovely.
  - 4 A Do you want to go out for a coffee?
    - B I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

#### Unit 65

- 1 1 What shall we do this weekend?
  - 2 The weather's nice, so ...
  - 3 ... what about going to the beach?
  - 4 Yes, good idea.
  - 5 Maybe we could take the train.
  - 6 Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
  - 7 I'd prefer to get them at the station.
- 2 1 What shall we do this evening?
  - 2 Do you have a suggestion?
  - 3 What about going to see a film?
  - 4 I'd prefer to go by train.
  - 5 Yes, that's a good idea.
- 3 1 A What about going to the theatre?
  - B I'm not sure about that.
  - 2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
    - B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
    - A OK, let's do that.
  - 3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
    - B Let's go to an exhibition.
    - A Yeah, that's a good idea.

- 1 1 hand, worry 3 Do, fine
  - 2 eat, Could 4 like, Thanks
- 2 1 Can I give you a hand?
  - 2 Thank you very much.
  - 3 Would you like a drink?
  - 4 Thanks a lot.
  - 5 No, I'm fine, thanks.
- 3 1 A Would you like a drink?
  - B Yes, please. Could I have some water?
  - 2 A Do you need some help?
    - B No, I'm fine, thanks.
  - 3 A Would you like something to eat?
    - B Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
  - 4 A Can I give you a hand?
    - B No, don't worry.
- 41d 2e 3f 4a 5g 6b
- 5 1 of 5 Shall I 2 Let 6 give 3 Shall 7 me
  - 4 Would 8 want



#### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

- 6 1 you, lift, thanks, kind, you
  - 2 shall, make, please, me
  - 3 me, carry, thanks
  - 4 want

#### Unit 67

- 1 1 A I'm really sorry, I've lost your dictionary.
  - B Don't worry/never mind.
  - 2 A I'm sorry, I've forgotten your book.
    - B Don't worry.
  - 3 A I've broken your cup I'm very sorry.
    - B It doesn't matter.
- 2 1 That's 5 l'm
  - 2 worry 6 Sorry, problem
  - 3 very/really, matter 7 apologize
  - 4 mind 8 rude

#### Unit 68

- 1 1 What do you think of it?
  - 2 lagree with you.
  - 3 I don't think it's very good.
  - 4 It was a waste of money.
  - 5 Personally, I didn't like it.
  - 6 I prefer the other one
- 2 1 think, Personally 3 of, think
  - 2 opinion, agree 4 sure, prefer
- 3 Answers from a British person
  - 1 I'm not sure. I think children watch too much TV.
  - 2 1 agree. It's very bad for your health.
  - 3 Personally, I like it.
  - 4 I'm not sure. Other things are more important.
  - 5 I disagree. I think it's very expensive.

#### Unit 69

- 1 1D 25 3D 45 55 65
- 2 1 engaged, phone
  - 2 number, code
  - 3 call, out, message, rang, battery
  - 4 wrong
- 3 Answers from a British person
  - 1 My phone number is 600949, the area code is 01632, and my mobile number is 0779 893 200.
  - 2 My family.
  - 3 Only a few minutes.
  - 4 No, not very often. I text my sister sometimes.
- 4 1 Oh, hello, is that Kamal?
  - 2 Just a moment.
  - 3 Speaking.
  - 4 Oh, hello, how are you?

- 5 1 speaking
  - 2 This is/It's

  - 3 in/there, please
  - 4 the moment 5 ring/call/phone
    - back/again
- 8 just a
- 7 speak to
- 9 get
- 10 Is that
- 11 speaking
- 12 It

6 noisy

7 narrow

8 unusual

9 asleep

10 wide

4 OPP

5 SYN

8 clear

6 necessary

7 strange/odd

#### Unit 70

- 1 1F 2T 3F 4T ST 6F 7T 8F
- 2 1 useful
  - 2 weak

  - 3 dead
  - 4 rich

  - 5 quiet
- 4 1 SYN
- 2 SYN
- 3 OPP
- 5 1 confusing
  - 2 helpful 3 impossible

  - 4 mad/crazy
    - 9 annoying/irritating
  - S only

- 1 1 He's 75 and he still plays tennis.
  - 2 It's nice there, especially in the morning.
  - 3 There are only three students in the class.
  - 4 He even works on Sunday.
  - 5 She's still at university.
  - 6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is even bigger.
- 2 1 only
  - 2 still
- 4 only 5 even
- 3 particularly
- 6 still
- **3** 1 Only
- 4 only
- 2 still
- 5 even
- 3 especially/
- 6 especially/ particularly
- particularly
- 4 1 very
  - 2 absolutely
  - 3 a bit/a little
  - 4 really
  - 5 really/extremely
  - 6 quite
  - 7 very/really
  - 8 really
- 5 Possible answers
  - 1 He was extremely good.
  - 2 The holiday was really wonderful.
  - 3 She's a bit unfriendly.
  - 4 The kitchen was really clean.
  - 5 The room was a little small.
  - 6 Her new boyfriend is absolutely awful.
  - 7 They're very nice people.
  - 8 The weather was really terrible.

### <u>ී</u> Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### Unit 72

- 1 1 put, cost, read 4 know, hold, grow 2 write, drive, win 5 buy, bring, think
- 3 spend, send, lend2 left, spoke, kept, won, did, found, felt, sat
- 3 1 was, slept 5 saw
  2 swam 6 bought
  3 rang 7 stood
  4 wrote, forgot 8 took, went
- 5 brought, kept, put, felt, held, spent, left, cost, thought, slept, stood up
- 6 1 forgotten 6 known
  2 given 7 spoken
  3 seen 8 driven
  4 taken 9 grown
  5 written
- They all end in -n or -en.
- 7 1 read 5 sent 2 driven 6 slept 3 taught 7 swum 4 won 8 spoken
- 8 Answers from an Argentinian person
  - 1 I read an English newspaper once a week.
  - 2 No, never.
  - 3 Yes, many times.
  - 4 Yes, a few times in a lottery.
  - 5 Oh, yes. It was terrible!
  - 6 Yes, on a cruise.
  - 7 Yes, many times.
  - 8 Yes, on several occasions.

#### **Unit 73**

- 1 1 out 4 out 5 2 up up 3 over 6 on 2 1 out 5 down 6 2 up up 7 off 3 on 4 down 8 over
- 4 1 Take it off. 5 Take them off.
  - 2 Try them on.3 Turn it on.7 Turn them on.
  - 4 Put them on. 8 Put it on.
- 5 1 Could I try it on?
  - 2 correct
  - 3 You can take it off if you're hot.
  - 4 Look it up in the dictionary.
  - 5 correct
  - 6 correct
  - 7 Did you put it on?
  - 8 correct

- 6 Answers from a Hungarian person
  - 1 I grew up in Budapest.
  - 2 I always feel hungry.
  - 3 Once or twice a week.
  - 4 I don't know many of them, but I get on well with my neighbours.
  - 5 I try on trousers or shoes, but I often buy shirts without trying them on.

#### Unit 74

- 1 1 2005 6 midnight
  2 Friday 7 the autumn
  3 April 8 winter
  4 the morning 9 dirmer time
  5 4.00 10 the evening
- 2 1 at 6 in 2 at 7 in 3 in 8 at 4 in 9 At 5 On 10 on
- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
  - 1 | get up at 7.30.
  - 2 I study English at night.
  - 3 I go swimming at the weekend.
  - 4 I watch TV in the evening.
  - 5 I go to sleep at around 11.30.
  - 6 I see my family in the mornings.
  - 7 The last time I went on holiday was in October last year.
  - 8 The last time I went to the mountains was in 2003.
  - 9 The last time I went to bed very late was at New Year.
  - 10 The last time I went to a party was in December.

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8F 9T 10T
- 2 1 ago 4 time
  - 2 diary 5 appointment
  - 3 night 6 next
- 3 1 I went to the cinema
  - 2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's Bar
  - 3 | stayed at Gary's/l went to Gary's
  - 4 I've got a doctor's appointment
  - 5 It's Pete's birthday
  - 6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad
- 4 1 before 5 since 2 after 6 later 3 until 7 for 4 at 8 soon

### ු Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

5 1	until	5	at
2	for	6	since
3	soon	7	before
4	in	8	later

6 Your own answers

#### Unit 76

1	1	in	8	on
	2	on	9	on
	3	at	10	in
	4	in	11	on
	5	in	12	at
	6	on	13	on
	7	in	14	at
2	1	in	4	on
	2	in	5	in
	3	on	6	at. at. i

3 Answers from a Brazilian person

▶ Brazil.

1 In a city.

2 In a flat.

3 Yes, Rio Guaiba.

4 It's on the second floor.

5 Yes, I do.

6 I'm learning at work, three hours a week in private lessons.

4 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8T 9T

5 1 nextto 5 between 2 in front of 6 opposite 7 next to 4 next to

6 Answers from a German person

1 An old factory.

2 More houses.

3 A pub, and more houses.

4 Yes, there's a supermarket and a newsagents around the corner.

5 The neighbours' flat.

6 Another neighbour's flat.

6 bus stop 8 1 trees 2 motorway 7 mountain 8 stairs 3 river 9 building 4 shop 5 gate 10 field 6 through 9 1 under 7 out of 2 into 3 up 8 down 4 along 9 across 5 past 10 under

#### Unit 77

1 1 x ... and it's also near the park.

2 x ... and he understands Greek too.

31

4 X ... and also washed the car.

51

6 🛪 ... and a park near the house as well.

2 1 I often eat ice cream and I also like yoghurt.

2 | enjoy watching TV but I go to the cinema a lot too.

3 I can speak English and I can understand German as well.

4 I read a lot of books but I also listen to music.

5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.

#### 3 Your own answers

4	1	because of	4	SO
	2	to	5	to
	3	because	6	so
5	1	to	5	so
	2	SO	6	to
	3	because of	7	because of
	4	because	8	to

#### Unit 78

1	1	sure	4	sure
	2	not sure	5	sure
	3	not sure	6	not sure
2	1	If	4	when
	2	When	5	when
	3	if	6	If
3	1	when	4	when
	2	when	5	while/when
	3	while/when	6	when

4 1 Then

2 Afterwards/After that

3 Finally

4 First/First of all/Firstly

5 then/after that/afterwards

5 1 Firstly/First/First of all, she made the pasta sauce, and then she boiled the pasta. After that/Then/Afterwards/Finally, she added the sauce to the pasta.

2 Firstly/First/First of all, I did a degree in History, and then I did a Masters degree. After that/Afterwards, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.

3 Firstly/First/First of all, we started our holiday in Heidelberg, and then we stayed in Munich for a few days. After that/Afterwards/Finally, we flew back to Rome

4 Firstly/First/First of all, I made a shopping list, and then I went to the market. After that/Afterwards, I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner.



### Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

6 Answers from a Greek person
First of all I went to see a friend, and then
we had lunch together. After that, I went
home and watched my favourite show on
the TV and after that I read a book. Late in
the evening I had dinner and finally went to
bed at about midnight.

#### **Unit 79**

- 1 1 She's got blue eyes.
  - 2 They've got a small dog.
  - 3 I haven't got a mobile phone.
  - 4 He hasn't got any money.
  - 5 Have you got any sisters?
  - 6 Has she got a flat in town?
- 2 1 Has she got any children? or Does she have any children?
  - 2 They've got a lovely garden. on They have a lovely garden.
  - 3 Has she got long hair? or Does she have long hair?
  - 4 My sister hasn't got a boyfriend. or My sister doesn't have a boyfriend.
  - 5 Have you got a computer? or Do you have a computer?
  - 6 We haven't got any friends here. or We don't have any friends here.
- **3** 1 got **4** Have
  - 2 Do 5 Do
  - 3 Have
- 4 Answers from a British person
  - 1 Yes, I have, I use it to go to college.
  - 2 Yes, an Apple.
  - 3 Yes, his name's Barney.
  - 4 Yes, I've got the Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.
  - 5 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

5

Group 1	Group 2	Group 3	Group 4	Group 5
rest	breakfast	bath	swim	holiday
break	lunch	shower	run	weekend
	dinner	wash	walk	journey

6	1	walk	4	swim
	2	drink	5	rest
	3	dinner	6	journey
7	1	eat/drink	5	time/day
	2	rest/break	6	weekend
	3	break	7	holiday/time
	4	iourney	8	bath

- 1 1 Did you get my message?
  - 2 I must get some new clothes.
  - 3 We got home late last night.
  - 4 It's getting cold.
  - 5 I got three letters today.
  - 6 Where did you get that bag?
  - 7 He needs to get a job.
  - 8 Do you want to get a/the train?
- 2 1 receive
   2 buy
   3 arrive
   4 become
   5 receive
   6 buy
   7 obtain
   8 travel
- 3 1 get a/the bus
  - 2 get here/home/back
  - 3 get them
  - 4 getting cold
  - 5 getting late
  - 6 get it
  - 7 get one
  - 8 get a bus/taxi

# Review answer key

### **Basic English**

#### Unit 1

- 1 twelve
- 2 fifteen
- 3 thirteen
- 4 thirty-four
- 5 eleven
- 6 seventy-nine
- 7 alone hundred and twelve
- 8 twenty-seven
- 9 a/one hundred and seventy-five
- 10 two hundred and eighty-six
- 11 forty-one
- 12 nine hundred and fifty-three

#### Unit 2

- 1 twenty to two, five to two
- 2 midnight/midday, quarter past twelve
- 3 five past eleven, twenty past eleven
- 4 twenty past two, twenty-five to three
- 5 five to nine, ten past nine
- 6 half past six, quarter to seven
- 7 twenty-five past five, twenty to six

#### Unit 3

- 1 1 date, of 4 birthday 2 month, year 5 Year's Day
  - 3 season
- 2 1 March 5 Saturday 2 autumn 6 July
  - 3 Thursday 7 September
  - 4 May 8 November

#### Unit 4

- 1 1 Italy C 9 Brazil C
  2 Hungary C 10 Turkey C
  3 Mexico C 11 Greek N
  4 Swiss N 12 French N
  5 China C 13 Germany C
  6 Czech N 14 Russia C
  - 7 Egypt C 15 Argentinian N
  - 8 Spanish N 16 Portugal C
- 2 1 Poland 7 Korean 2 Brazilian 8 Turkish 3 Czech Republic 9 Italian
  - 4 Czech 10 Chinese 5 Polish 11 Spain
  - 6 Japanese 12 Australian

#### Unit 5

1	board	6	notebook
2	rubber	7	CD player
3	noticeboard	8	chair
4	dictionary	9	table/desk
5	pencil sharpener	10	folder

#### Unit 6

_			
1	sentence	7	pronoun
2	adverb	8	word
3	preposition	9	adjective
4	phrase	10	singular
	regular	11	irregular
6	article	12	plural

	1	S	P	A	S	T	S	1	M	Р	L	D
1	V	(8)	T	A	R	T	1	C	L	E	W	P
١	D	E	U	P	S	1	N	G	U	L	A	R
		N	G	R	E	G	U	L	A	R	D	E
	R	T	M	0	U	D	Y	L	U	R	7	P
1	R	E	1	N	T	R	0	S	E	K	E	0
	E	N	L	0	A	D	G	Т	P	D	c	S
	G	C	L	U	K	E	R	U	L	E	Т	1
	U	E	D	W	U	W	E	M	U	1	П	T
	L	Y	A	D	V	E	R	B	R	M	V	1
	A	R	0	F	0	P	Н	R	A	S	E	0
	R	U	W	0	R	0	C	0	W	R	P	M

#### Unit 7

- 1 Wrong.
- 2 Spelling is how you write something, and pronunciation is how you say something.
- 3 Your own answer.
- 4 /ik'splein/
- 5 It's the opposite of right or correct.
- 6 No, that's wrong.
- 7 A frying pan.
- 8 S-T-A-M-P.

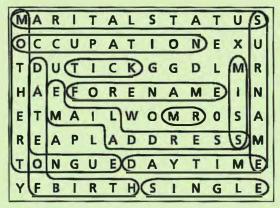
### People

1	name	6	postcode
2	you come	7	do
3	from	8	'm/am
4	exactly	9	are you
5	I have	10	how old



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### Unit 9



#### Unit 10

1			0	R	E	L	A	T	ī	٧	E	3
1	G	3	J	0	G		W	E	5	(G)	T	I
ı	K		O	Α	U	G	Н	Τ	E	R	D	0
ı	0	5	Y	M	E	F	0	T	N	A	U	M
	A		В	X	Œ	U	5	В	A	N		
	U	E	R	1	0	U	N	L	1	D	Q	(5)
	N	R	B	R	0	T	H		R	F	U	0
	U	Ī	P	W	U		C	L	E	A	1	W
ï	L		0				1	C	A	T	M	U
1	0	L	W	F	1	5	(N	Ε	Р	H	E	W
	e	A	R	E	(N)	T	3	J	0	E	T	1
	R	W	U	N	1	E	С	D	E	R	F	Α

- 2 1 My brother is eighteen years old.
  - 2 I was born in 1990.
  - 3 My sister Is younger than me.
  - 4 His parents are divorced.
  - 5 There are five of us in my family.
  - 6 She is older than her brother.
  - 7 We spend a lot of time together.
  - B Who is the youngest in the family?

#### Unit 11

- 1 Using your hands: push, pick something up, hold, pull, carry, drop, turn something off, put something down Using your feet or legs: walk, stand up, jump, run, ride, climb
- 2 1 door 6 a bag 2 a wall 7 a pencil 3 a radio 8 a tree 4 a bicycle 9 a book 5 a bicyde 10 a bed

#### Unit 12

1 1 A 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 B B B 9 B 10 A 11 B 12 A 13 A 2 1 arm 3 hand 5 bottom 2 neck 4 foot 6 nose

#### Unit 13

- 1 Possible answers
  - 1 He's short and overweight. He's got short, brown hair and a moustache. He's middleaged.
  - 2 She's average height and average weight. She's got long, blonde, curly hair. She's a teenager/young person.
  - 3 He's got medium-length, fair, wavy hair. He's got brown eyes and a beard. He's an adult.
  - 4 She's attractive. She's got short, grey hair and brown eyes. She's elderly.
- 2 2 a child
  - 3 a teenager
  - 4 in your mid-twentles
  - 5 in your early thirtles
  - 6 in your late thirties
  - 7 middle-aged
  - B in your early sixties
  - 9 elderly

#### Unit 14

 Positive: funny, clever, kind, sociable Negative: stupid, untidy, horrible Positive or negative: quiet, organized, serious

2 1 lazy	5 intelligent	
2 shy	6 on my own	1
3 shared	7 funny	
4 fun	8 organized	

6 together

#### Unit 15

**1** 1 went

	2	married	7	up
	3	relationship	В	get
		get	9	couple
	5	had		
2	1	get	5	give
	2	become	6	become
		İs	7	get
	4	see	В	Is

#### Unit 16

1	1	excited	6	tired
		hungry	7	scared
	3	surprised	В	nervous
	4	embarrassed	9	matter
	5	worried	10	thirsty

2 1 P 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N 8 N 9 N 10 P

### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### **Everyday life**

#### Unit 17

- 1 1 We sometimes go for a walk after lunch.
  - 2 Do you usually play tennis at the weekend?
  - 3 I usually go to the gym, and then I go home.
  - 4 She listens to music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping.
  - 5 On Sundays I often stay in and watch TV.
  - 6 I talk to my parents every evening.
  - 7 My sister occasionally comes round and we have dinner together.
  - 8 What time do you get to work in the morning?
- 2 1 j 2 i 3 e 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 d 8 f 9 k 10 g

#### Unit 18

1	1	socks	-	5	tie
	2	hat		7	jumper
	3	gloves			tights
	4	boots		9	T-shirt
	5	watch	10	0	belt
2	1	yellow		5	red
	2	green		7	orange
	3	purple		3	grey
	4	pink		9	pale/light blue
	5	brown	10		dark blue

- 3 1 a scarf
  - 2 a pair of jeans or some jeans
  - 3 some ties
  - 4 a pair of trousers or some trousers
  - 5 some shirts
  - 6 a jacket
  - 7 a pair of trainers or some trainers
  - 8 a pair of sandals or some sandals

#### Unit 19

1	1	take	9	cash desk
	2	loose	10	medium
	3	cheap	11	help
	4	size	12	wrong
	5	try	13	casual
	6	changing	14	assistant
	7	pay	15	leave
	8	horrible	16	need
2	1	looking	7	too
	2	take	8	size
	3	nice	9	lovely/nice
	4	on	10	them
	5	room	11	pay
	6	look	12	cash

#### Unit 20

1	1F 2T 3T	4F 5T 6T	
2	1 Lottery	5 price	9 earn
	2 sold	6 saved	10 paid
	3 bought	7 paid	11 bills
	4 cost	8 in	12 fare

#### Unit 21

1	1	a bit	4	a bit of	
	2	a lot of	5	a bit	
	3	a lot	6	a lot of	
2	A	ross	Do	wn	
	2	blows	1	lot	
	5	ice	3	storm	
	8	humid	4	windy	
	9	snow	6	shower	
	11	freezing	7	thunder	
	12	heavy	10	shines	
	13	dry	11	foggy	

#### Unit 22

1	-			F	_	-	-	0	•	0
	<u></u>	M	X		A		Z		0	5
	(B	Α	C	K	Α		H	E)	J	0
	Q	(5)	0	1	D	0	Y	A	M	R
	R	1	F	L	U	L	Y	D	Z	Е
	U	C	J	A	H	0	E	A	K	Т
	1	(K)	W	Е	5	B	1	c	R	Н
	Œ	Ō	0	Т	Н	Α	C	H	E)	R
	A	S	٧	Ε	C	E	G	E	L	0
	F	H	U	R	Т	5)	D	E	M	A
	R	5	K	E	V	W	E	L	D	U

- 1 I've got a headache.
- 2 I've got a sore throat.
- 3 I've got toothache.
- 4 I've got backache.
- 5 I've got flu.
- 6 I feel sick.
- 7 I don't feel well.
- 8 My arm hurts.
- 9 I've got a pain in my ear.

1 something	6 Take
2 Try/Take	7 could
3 tablets	8 box
4 often	9 medicine
5 take	



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

### Food and drink

#### Unit 24

Animal: duck, pig, sheep, lamb, cow Meat: beef, duck, pork, lamb, ham Fish: tuna, salmon Seafood: crab, mussels, prawns, squid

#### Unit 25

1 Possible answers
red: red pepper, tomato, cherry, chilli,
strawberry
yellow: banana, lemon, pineapple, melon
orange: orange, carrot, peach, mango
white/cream: garlic, mushroom, potato,
cauliflower
green: peas, beans, cabbage, lettuce,
cucumber, courgette



#### Unit 26

1 Possible answers

Packet: biscuits, pasta, rice, butter
Carton: orange juice, milk
Box: eggs, matches, chocolates
Bottle: milk, olive oil, water, orange juice, wine
Jar: jam, olives
Tin: tomatoes, tuna

2 Possible answers

1 Could I have some sugar, please?

2 I'd like some sugar, please.

3 Have you got any sugar?

4 Anything else?

5 That's it, thanks.

6 How much (sugar) would you like?

#### Unit 27

1 C I'd like a toasted ham sandwich please.

2 W Is that to eat here or take away?

3 C Take away. And a cheese baguette, please.

4 W Fine. Anything else?

5 C Yes, a black coffee and two teas with lemon.

6 W OK, it will be a couple of minutes.

7 W Have a seat.

#### Unit 28

1 1 fork, spoon 5 pepper 2 main course, dessert 6 vinegar 3 fried or roast or boiled 7 white 4 medium, well done 8 sparkling

2 1 W Are you ready to order?

C Yes, I'll have the tomato soup.

W Right. And for your main course?

C Fillet steak with chips.

2 W Do you want red wine or white wine?

C Red wine, please.

W OK. Is that a bottle or just a glass?

3 At the end of the meal.

C Could I have the bill, please?

W Yes, of course.

### **Getting around**

#### Unit 29

1 Does this bus go to The National Museum?

2 How many stops is it to the railway station?

3 Excuse me, does this bus go to Alfred Road?

4 How long does it take to get to the centre?

5 Does the 31 stop next to the post office?

6 Does the 9 stop outside the school?

7 Which bus do I get to Queen Street?

8 Do the buses run every ten minutes?

9 How long does it take to the centre?

10 How often do the buses run?

#### Unit 30

1 1 platform 6 journey 2 fast 7 carriage 3 miss 8 ticket 4 reserve 9 fare

5 timetable

The word in the grey squares is 'passenger'.

2 1 next train 4 leave 2 direct 5 get to 3 change 6 platform

#### Unit 31

1 1 The bank is on the right.

2 How do I get to the river?

3 Go along here and turn left.

4 Go straight on and turn right.

5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?

6 Yes, it's on the corner of this street.



#### Sara. English. School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

- 2 1 The bank is opposite of the hotel.
  - 2 Go straight on and keep to going.
  - 3 Is there a post office near from here?
  - 4 It's on the your left. or It's on the your
  - 5 Turn to left and go straight on.
  - 6 It's the third turning on the right side.

#### Unit 32

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8T 9 F 10 T
- 2 1 motorway
  - 5 lane 2 speed limit 6 traffic jams
  - 3 overtake 7 rush hour
  - 4 accident 8 take

#### Unit 33

- 1 'no parking' 5 'sale'
- 2 'entrance' or 'way in' 6 out of order
- 3 'no vacancies' 7 'no exit'
- 4 'please do not disturb' 8 'no smoking'

#### **Places**

#### Unit 34

- 1 north 6 capital 2 south 7 river
- 3 coast; coast 8 mountain
- 4 enormous 9 beach
- 5 border 10 famous

#### Unit 35

- 1 1 a modern city 5 there's nothing to do
  - 2 over a million 6 a quiet street
  - 3 north-east 7 clean
- 4 dangerous
- 8 fact
- 2 1 of
- 7 on 8
- 2 population
- famous
- 3 historic
- 9 Statue
- 4 palace

- 10 Square
- 5 place
- 11 Park
- 6 city
- 12 cosmopolitan

#### Unit 36

- 1 1 valley 5 grass
  - 2 healthy 6 path
  - 3 boat 7 lake
  - 4 farmer 8 alone
- 4 lonely 2 1 horse
  - 2 grow 5 own
  - 3 crops 6 countryside

#### Unit 37

- 1 1 shopping centre
  - 2 newsagent's
  - 3 chemist's
  - 4 hypermarket, supermarket
  - baker's
  - 6 bookshop
  - 7 butcher's
  - 8 department store
  - 9 music shop
- 2 1 queue 6 stalls
  - 7 indoors 2 shopping
  - 3 convenient 8 basket
  - 4 prefer 9 get
  - 5 market 10 checkout
  - The word in the grey squares is 'supermarket'.

#### Unit 38

- 1 1 bathroom 5 garage
  - 2 kitchen 6 lift
  - 3 bedroom 7 garden
  - 4 study 8 home

2 1f 2b 3a 4g 5i 6h 7c 8e

#### Unit 39

- 1 1 dishwasher, sink 5 cupboard
  - 2 washing machine 6 fridge
  - 7 freezer
- 4 microwave 8 oven
- 2 1 put 4 Do, empty
- 2 Put, turn 5 cook
  - 3 turn, out

- 1 8edroom: wardrobe, blanket, sheet, chest of drawers, single bed, desk
  - 8athroom: towel, toilet, shower, washbasin, bath, bidet
- 2 1 put on or take off, make-up or tissues
  - 2 have, a razor or an electric razor
  - 3 clean, a toothbrush and toothpaste
  - 4 do or brush, a brush or a comb
  - 5 have, soap

### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### Unit 41

- 1 1 Picture 1 has got cushions, but picture 2 hasn't.
  - 2 Picture 1 has got one armchair, picture 2 has got two.
  - 3 Picture 1 has got a radiator, but picture 2 hasn't.
  - 4 Picture 1 has got two lamps, but picture 2 has got one.
  - 5 Picture 1 has got a picture on the wall, but picture 2 hasn't.
  - 6 Picture 1 has got a rug on the floor, but picture 2 hasn't.
  - 7 Picture 2 has got a fireplace, but picture 1 hasn't.
  - 8 Picture 2 has got a carpet, but picture 1 hasn't.
  - 9 Picture 2 has got a light, but picture 1 hasn't.
  - 10 Picture 2 has got a coffee table, but picture 1 hasn't.

### Study and work

#### Unit 42

1	1	biology	7	geography
	2	history	. 8	chemistry
	3	literature	9	design and
	4	physics		technology
		maths/music	10	modern language

6 art 2 1 j 2 a 3 g 4 e 5 i 6 b 7 f 8 h 9 d

ad

3	1	badly	4	terrible/b
	2	failed	5	nursery
	3	state	6	best

#### Unit 43

1	1	science	5	again
	2	lasts		degree
	3	terms	7	research

4 do/write 8 PhD or Doctor of Philosophy

2 People: undergraduate, engineer, lawyer, politician Subjects: medicine, economics, architecture, business studies, politics Phrases: do research, do a degree, write an essay

#### Unit 44

#### Possible answers

- 1 a dentist, a vet, a businessman, a businesswoman
- 2 a dentist, a nurse, a vet, a builder, a hairdresser
- 3 a businessman or businesswoman, a pilot, a shop assistant
- 4 retired, unemployed
- 5 a pilot, a nurse, a police officer, a soldier
- 6 a businessman, a businesswoman

#### Unit 45

1	1 j	2 h	3 a	4 g	5 c	6 i	7 e	8 d	9 f
2	1 i	n			4	nen	4		

2	1	in	4	spend
	2	time	5	earn/get
	3	а	6	colleagues

#### Unit 46

1	1	laptop	5	backup copy
		keyboard		hard drive
	3	mouse mat	7	printout
	4	memory stick	8	webcam

2	1	сору	5	save
	2	screen	6	print
	3	cut	7	paste

4 mouse

The word in the grey squares is 'document'.

#### Unit 47

1 chatroom, broadband, download, website, online, search engine, inbox, junk mail

2	4	attachment	7	broadband
2		attachment	/	broadband
	2	message	8	internet
	3	online	9	receive
	4	delete	10	use
	5	fast	11	visit
	_			

6 send

### **Hobbies and interests**

- 1 1 I love it, it's my favourite thing, it's wonderful, I think it's fantastic
  - 2 I quite enjoy it, It's quite enjoyable
  - 3 I think it's OK
  - 4 I'm not very keen on it, I don't like it very much, I'm not very interested in it
  - 5 I really hate it

2	1	interested	4	to
	2	on	5	boring
	2	driving	6	quita like

### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### Unit 49

- 1 1 volleyball, tennis, basketball
  - 2 rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, tennis, basketball
  - 3 football, rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, basketball
  - 4 a) tennis b) ice hockey
- 2 1 matches 4 scored 2 drew 5 goals 3 lost 6 top

#### Unit 50

1	1	favourite, go	4	instrument
	2	does	5	classical
	3	repairs	6	do, spend

- 2 1 spending play 2 going arranging
  - 3 games

#### Unit 51

- 1 Pop and rock: band, lead singer, drummer, single, guitar Classical music: orchestra, violin, conductor, composer, cello
- 2 Possible answers
  - 1 Bryn Terfel is a famous opera singer in my
  - 2 Chris Martin is lead singer with Coldplay.
  - 3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous conductor.
  - 4 The London Symphony orchestra comes from my country.
  - 5 Alfred Brendel is a great pianist.
  - 6 Sergeant Pepper by the Beatles is one of my favourite albums.
  - 7 'Beautiful liar' by Beyoncé and Shakira is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
  - 8 Charlie Watts is the drummer with the Rolling Stones.

#### Unit 52

1 1 war, violent 4 thriller, exciting 2 comedy, funny 5 love, romantic 3 horror, frightening

see

- 2 1 about 5 reviews 2 in 6 director
  - 3 stars 4 actor

#### Unit 53

1 I usually buy a newspaper every day to find (1) out what has happened, but vesterday I listened (2) to the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it (3) on TV. As usual most (4) of it was bad news: more than twenty people (5) died in a terrible

road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting (6) programme about a television news (7) reporter who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

21c 2e 3d 4f 5b 6a

### Holidays

#### Unit 54

1 arrange	6	book
2 currency	7	pack
3 hire	8	flight
4 go abroad	9	accommodation

5 holiday

#### Unit 55

	h 2a 3d b 10c	4j 5g	6f 7i	8 k
2 1	stayed	5	delicious	
	suite	6	night	
3	facilities		parking	
4	staff		book	

#### Unit 56

1	1i	2 e	3 g	4 h	5 b	6 a	7 d	8 f	90
2	1.1	trolle	v		6 0	tor			

2 ticket fastened 8 landed 3 scales 4 flight 9 collected 10 went/walked 5 delayed

#### Unit 57

- 1 ... We flew to Marseille ...
- 2 ... we had to get a bus to Cassis ...
- 3 ... holiday resort by the sea ...
- 4 ... We rented an apartment ...
- ... we went for a walk ...
- ... we sunbathed on the beach ...
- 7 ... an hour of so ...
- 8 ... was perfect for the whole week ...

- 1 We're going on a tour of the city this afternoon.
- 2 Did you go sightseeing in Paris?
- 3 We always get lost in a new place.
- 4 She took a lot of photos on her holiday.
- 5 Did you visit the museum? (Nor at the museum)
- 6 There were lots of typical tourists.
- 7 There's a good exhibition at the art
- 8 Have you got a guldebook about London, please?



## Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### Unit 59

חי	I	29		
1	1	post office	7	per cent
	2	postcode	8	parcel
	3	postman/	9	currency
		postwoman	10	cash machine
	4	postbox	11	change
	5	postcards	12	commission
	6	put, put	13	charge, charge
2	1	send		4 exchange rate

5 into

6 bureau, change

### **Social English**

3 deliver

#### Unit 60

1	2 D 3	5 4 D	5 5	6 5	75	85
2	one to	ee vou		5 cl	naka l	hands

2 envelope/letter/parcel

2	1	hope to see you	5	shake hands
		again	6	see you soon
	2	how are you?	7	nice to meet yo
	3	not bad	8	hi there
	4	how do you do?	9	see you later

#### Unit 61

- 1 happy birthday
- 2 have a good weekend
- 3 congratulations
- 4 good luck
- 5 well done
- 6 welcome home
- 7 have a good holiday
- 8 Happy New Year

#### Unit 62

1 1 How many?	6	How long?
2 Why?		Whose?
3 How far?	8	Which?
4 How often?	9	Who?
5 Where?		

- 2 1 How 4 often 2 do 5 long 3 does 6 kind of
- 3 Answers from a South Korean person
  - ▶ I have a problem with speaking fluently and pronunciation.
  - 1 I've got one brother.
  - 2 I work at a travel agency.
  - 3 She works in a nursery school as a teacher.
  - 4 More than ten hours a week.
  - 5 For ten years.
  - 6 I don't like playing games, but I like watching football.

#### Unit 63

1	1	you, I	6	1
	2	1,1	7	1
	3	you	8	you
	4	you		you
	5	i		

2 no problem, of course, go ahead, I'm afraid I need it, that's fine

#### Unit 64

- 1 A Would you like to have lunch tomorrow? or Do you want to have lunch tomorrow?
  - B I'm afraid but I can't. or I'm sorry but I can't.
- 2 A Would you like to go skiing this weekend? or Do you want to go skiing this weekend?
  - B Yes, that sounds fun! or That would be fun.
- 3 A Would you like to come round here for a drink tonight?
  - B Yes, I'd love to, but I'm busy.
- 4 A Do you want to come round for a meal at the weekend?
  - B I'm sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

#### Unit 65

1	shall	5	about
2	maybe	6	idea
3	could	7	Let
4	sure		

- 1 Would you like a sandwich? Do you want a drink? or Do you want a sandwich?
  Would you like a drink?
- 2 Do you need a hand? Do you want some help? OR Do you need some help? Do you want a hand?
- 3 No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.
- 4 Thanks a lot. Thank you very much.
- 5 Let me pay for the coffees. Shall I do that for you?
- 6 That's very kind of you. Thank you very much.



#### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com Sara.English.School

#### Unit 67

#### Possible answers

- 1 A I'm sorry, I forgot to post your letter.
  - B Never mind. or It doesn't matter. or Don't worry.
- 2 A I'm sorry I'm late.
  - B That's OK. or Don't worry.
- 3 A I'm really sorry, I've broken a cup.
  - B That's OK. or It doesn't matter.
- 4 A Sorry, could you repeat that, please? B Sure, no problem.

#### Unit 68

1	opinion	4	prefer
2	excellent	5	personally
3	disagree	6	a waste of

#### Unit 69

1 1	ring/call, at the	3	ring/phone
	moment	4	just a moment
2	speaking	5	sent me a text

- 2 1 B Is that Cheryl?
  - 2 A Yes, speaking.
  - 3 B Hi. It's Keira.
  - 4 A Hello, Keira. How are you?
  - 5 B I'm fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?
  - 6 A Yes. Just a moment I'll get her.

4 rich

7 B Thanks.

### Language

1 1 narrow

#### Unit 70

	2	dead		5	asleep
	3	noisy			
2	1	helpful		5	noisy
	2	commo	n	6	unnecessary
	3	useless		7	clear
	4	strange		8	annoying
	Th	ne word	in grey	is 'ne	ecessary'.

#### Unit 71

- 1 1 We couldn't play the match with only ten players.
  - 2 He lives in Italy, but still speaks English most of the time.
  - 3 The food is absolutely fantastic in that restaurant.
  - 4 Max didn't like the film but I thought it was quite good.
  - 5 The last film was good, but this is even
  - 6 My English is getting a bit better.

#### 2 Possible answers

1	winter	4	16
2	awful	5	tired
3	slow	6	nice

#### Unit 72

	Across			Down
1	been		1	went
4	read		2	seen
6	took		3	bought
9	put		5	done
11	found		7	known
13	slept		8	ran
14	sent	1	0	thought
15	forgot	1	2	left
		1	3	sat
		1	4	spent

#### Unit 73

- 1 1 I grew up in a village.
  - 2 Why don't you sit down?
  - 3 I must find out their address.
  - 4 She fell over in the street.
  - 5 Did you go out last night?
  - 6 Could you turn on the light? or Could you turn the light on?
  - 7 Look it up in your dictionary.
  - 8 Could I try them on?

2	1	gave up	4	take off
	2	going up	5 9	get on (well
	3	go back	6	carry on

#### Unit 74

In: December, summer, 2007, the afternoon, the 21st century

At: three o'clock, half past five, breakfast, the weekend, midnight

On: Monday morning, the sixth of March, my birthday, Tuesday, Friday evening

#### Unit 75

1

1 last week	5 this evening	
2 two days ago	6 tomorrow mornin	g
3 yesterday	7 tomorrow evening	9
afternoon	8 next Monday	
4 last night	9 in ten days' time	

- 2 1 I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I found an apartment or found somewhere to live.
  - 2 I met a Spanish man after I got a job in (the south of) Portugal.
  - 3 I've lived in the house I bought since I got
  - 4 I've lived in Portugal for five years.
  - 5 Soon I'm going to have a baby.
  - 6 At the moment we're preparing a room for the baby.



## Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

#### Unit 76

1	1	over	7	next to
	2	past	8	into
	3	near	9	out of
	4	above	10	opposite
	5	down	11	between
	6	across	12	through

- 2 1 near, above, next to, opposite
  - 2 past, across, into, out of, through ('near' and 'next to' are also possible)
- 3 In: my town, Germany, the countryside, the bedroom

At: school, home, a football match, work
On: the table, the wall, the coast, the second
floor

#### Unit 77

1 1g 2i	3 e	4 h	5 f	6 d	7 a	8 b
---------	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

2	1	because of	4	because
	2	to	5	so
	3	also	6	as well

#### **Unit 78**

- 1 1 When you're travelling on a long flight, always wear comfortable clothes.
  - 2 If you can choose your seat on the plane, sit near the front where it's quiet.
  - 3 While/When you are waiting for the flight, sit in the departure lounge.
  - 4 When you get off, don't leave anything on the plane.
  - 5 If you feel ill during the flight, tell the airline staff.
  - 6 If you lose your passport on holiday, go to the embassy.
- 2 1 first of all 4 After that or Then 2 while 5 finally

#### Unit 79

1 1	have	5	didn't
2	a	6	time
3	Did you have	7	a rest
4	Have	8	was, had

3 Then or After that 6 if

- 2 1 We had a break for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
  - 2 We had something to eat at the beach.
  - 3 My sister's/has got blonde hair.
  - 4 I was hot, so I had a shower/bath before dinner.
  - 5 We had a terrible/bad day at work. I hate my job!
  - 6 Have a lovely holiday/time in the Caribbean!
  - 7 I'd like to go on holiday, but I don't have any money.
  - 8 On Sunday, we just had a rest and did nothing.

- 1 arrive 9, obtain 2, buy 7, travel by 8, receive 4 and 6, become 3 and 5
- 2 Answers from a Hungarian person
  - 1 No, I'm happy in my current job.
  - 2 Yes, I get very tired when it's hot.
  - 3 I get about one or two messages a day.
  - 4 No.
  - 5 Tickets to see my favourite actor at the theatre.
  - 6 I bought them from a shop in the centre of town.
  - 7 I never get the train to work, I always walk.
  - 8 I got home at about ten o'clock last night.



# **Spotlight boxes**

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page	Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
1	about	14	39B	do + noun	101
3A	Capital letters	16	40B	have + noun	103
3B	Saying and writing dates	17	42A	be good at something	109
4	People from a country	18	42B	at (the age of)	110
8	information	26	42C	exam (examination)	111
10B	How old are you?	29	43A	How long does it last?	112
11A	Irregular verbs	30	44	a/an with jobs	114
13A	thin, fat, ugly	33	45B	Spend time doing something	117
13C	Other phrases for age	35	46A	keep	118
14A	What's like?	36	48A	like/love/hate + -ing	126
14B	really	37	48B	interesting/interested	127
15A	relationship	38	49B	Irregular verbs	129
15B	each other	39	51B	by	133
16B	get + adjective	41	52A	What kind of?	134
17A	usually and normally	46	53B	watch, see, listen, hear	137
17C	every and all	48	54	might + verb	141
18A	wear	49	55B	That's a shame/What a shame	143
18C	Plural nouns	50	58	should + verb	147
19B	too and very	52	60A	Introductions	153
19C	I'll take it/I'll leave it	53	60B	See you	154
20A	Money	54	61	cheers	155
21A	a lot (of)/a bit (of)	56	62A	whose and belong to	156
22A	be ill/sick	58	62B	which or what?	157
22B	should + verb	59	63A	Being polite	158
23	Asking for things in a chemist's	60	63B	lend and borrow	159
24	pig	65	64	Would you like to	
25B	salad	67		or Do you want to?	160
26A	Uncountable nouns	68	65	Saying no	161
26B	tin and can	69	66A	Saying thank you	162
26C	how much and how many	70	<b>66</b> B	let me + verb	163
27	Yes, please? and Yes, please.	71	67	(I'm) sorry	164
28C	another or some more	74	69A	Saying phone numbers	166
29	How long does it take?	78	70A	Position of adjectives	172
30A	last	80	71B	Gradable and ungradable	
30B	book something in advance	81		adjectives	175
31	Excuse me	82	72B	ever	177
35A	place	91	73A	Phrasal verbs	178
36B	alone and lonely	95	74	at	180
37A	Noun + shop	96	75B	for and since	182
38B	flat, house and home	99	79A	have and have got	190
			80	get	192



### Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a.m. /ei 'em/ 2 ATM /er ti: 'em/ 59 able /'eibl/ 51 about (= approximately) /ə'baot/ 1 about (= the subject is) /ə'baot/ 52 above /ə'bʌv/ 76 abroad /ə'bro:d/ 54 absolutely /'æbsəlu:tli/ 71 accept /ək'sept/ 66 access as in internet access / akses/ 55 accessories /ək'sesəriz/ 18 accident /'æksident/ 29 accommodation /əkpmə'dei[n/ 54 account as in bank account /ə'kaont/ 20 across /ə'kros/ 76 action /'æk [n/ 52 actor /'aektə(r)/ 52 actress /'æktrəs/ 52 address /ə'dres/ 8, 9, 47, 59 adjective /'aedziktiv/ 6 adult /'ædʌlt/ 13 advance as in in advance /əd'vo:ns/ 30 adverb /'ædvs:b/ 6 advert /'ædv3:t/ 53 advertisement /əd'va:tismənt/ 53 advice /əd'vais/ 15 afraid as in I'm afraid /ə'freid/ 63.64 afraid as in I'm afraid not /ə'freid/ 55 Africa /'æfrikə/ 4 after /'a:ftə(r)/ 2, 75 after that /'a:ftə ðæt/ 78 afternoon /a:ftə'nu:n/ 2, 60 afterwards /'a:ftəwədz/ 78 again /ə'gen/ 43, 60 against /ə'qenst/ 49 ago /ə'qəu/ 75 agree, agree with someone /ə'qri:/ 68 ahead as in go ahead /ə'hed/ 63 air conditioning /'eə kəndıʃənii)/ 55 airline /'eəlaın/ 45 airport /'eapa:t/ 56 aisle seat /'aıl si:t/ 56 album /'ælbəm/ 51 alive /ə'laɪv/ 70 all /o:1/ 17,53 all as in first of all /5:1/78 all as in that's all /5:1/26 all right /o:1 'rait/ 63, 67 almost /'a:lmaost/ 2.

alone /ə'ləun/ 36 along /ə'lpŋ/ 31, 76 also /'o:lsau/ 77 altogether /ɔ:ltə'geðə(r)/ 20 always /'ɔ:lweiz/ 17 American /əˈmerɪkən/ 4 and /ænd, ənd/ 77 and as in and you /zend, and/ 61 angry /ˈæŋgri/ 16 animal /'ænunl/ 24 ankle /'ænkl/ 12 annoying /ə'nənŋ/ 70 another /əˈnʌðə(r)/ 28 answer the phone /a:nsə ðə 'fəun/ 45 antiseptic /ænti'septik/ 23 anything else? /eniθη 'els/ 26 apartment /ə'pa:tmənt/ 57 apologize /əˈpnlədʒaɪz/ 67 apple /'apl/ 25 appointment /ə'pɔintmənt/ 75 Arabic /'ærəbik/ 4 architect /'a:kitekt/ 43 architecture /'a:kitekt[ə(r)/ 43 area /'eəriə/ 4, 36, 69 Argentina /a:dʒən'ti:nə/ 4 Argentinian /a:dʒən'tıniən/ 4 arm /a:m/ 12 armchair /'a:mt[eə(r)/ 41 arrange /əˈreɪndʒ/ 54 arranging as in flower arranging /əˈreɪndʒɪŋ/ 50 art /a:t/ 42 art gallery /a:t qæləri/ 58 article /'a:tikl/ 53 article as in (in)definite article /'a:tikl/ 7 as well /əz 'wel/ 77 Asia /'eiʒə/ 4 asleep /əˈsli:p/ 70 at as in be good at /æt, ət/ 42 at (= place) / at, at / 76at (= time) / at,  $\approx 1/2$ , 74 attachment /ə'tæt[mənt/ 47 attractive /ə'træktıv/ 13 aubergine /'əobəʒi:n/ 25 aunt /a:nt/ 10 Australasia /ostrəˈleɪʒə/ 4 Australia /p'streilia/ 4 Australian /p'streilian/ 4 autumn /'ɔ:təɪn/ 3 average /'ævəridʒ/ 13



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

avocado /ævəˈkɑːdəʊ/ 25 awake /əˈweɪk/ 70 awful /ˈɔːfl/ 19

BA (Bachelor of Arts)

/bi: 'ei (bætʃələr əv 'a:ts)/ 43

BSc (Bachelor of Science)

/bi: es 'si: (beets'ələr əv 'sarəns)/ 43

baby /'beɪbi/ 13, 15 back /bæk/ 12

backache /'bæketk/ 22 backup /'bækʌp/ 46

bacon /'beikən/ 24

bad as in not bad /bæd/ 60 badly as in do badly /'bædli/ 42

bag /bæg/ 5, 56 baggage /'bægɪdʒ/ 56 baguette /bæ'get/ 27 baker's /'beɪkəz/ 37 balcony /'bælkəni/ 38

ball /bo:1/ 49

banana /bəˈnaːnə/ 25 band /baend/ 51

bank account /'bænk əkaont/ 20

bar /ba:(r)/ 26

basement /'beismant/ 38 basket /'baskit/ 37

basket (used in basketball) /'baskit/ 49

basketball /'ba:skitbo:l/ 49

bath /ba:0/ 40, 79 bathroom /'ba:0ru:m/ 38 battery /'bæt(ə)ri/ 69 be /bi; bi/ 16

be /bix, bi/ 16 beach /bixts/ 34, 57 beans /bixnz/ 25 beard /biad/ 13 beat /bixt/ 49

beautiful / bju:tɪfl/ 13 because /bɪ'koz, -kəz/ 77 because of /bɪ'koz, -kəz əv/ 77

become /bi'kam/ 15 bed /bed/ 17, 22

bed as in single bed /bed/ 4() bedroom /'bedru:m/ 38 bedside table /bedsaid 'teibl/ 4()

bedside table /bedsaid teibi/ 40

beef /bi:f/ 24 before /bi'fɔ:(r)/ 75 beginning /bi'gɪnɪɪ]/ 46 behind /bi'haɪnd/ 76 believe /bi'li:v/ 53 bell /bel/ 33

belong /bi'lon/ 62 below /bi'ləv/ 76 belt /belt/ 18

belt as in seat belt /belt/ 56

best /best/ 42

best friend /best 'frend/ 15 between /bi'twi:n/ 7

between /bi'twi:n/ 76 bicycle /'baisikl/ 36 bidet /'bi:dei/ 40 big /big/ 19 bike /baik/ 36

bill /bil/ 20, 28 bin as in rubbish bin /bin/ 39 biology /bai'pladai/ 42

bird /b3:d/ 36

birth as in date of birth /bɜ:0/ 9 birthday /'bɜ:0deɪ/ 3,61 biscuits /'bɪskɪts/ 26

bit as in a bit, a bit of /bit/ 21

bitter /ˈbɪtə(r)/ 25 black /blæk/ 13, 18 black coffee /blæk 'kofi/ 27 blanket /ˈblænkɪt/ 40

block of flats /blok əv 'flæts/ 38

blonde /blond/ 13 blow /bloo/ 21 blue /blu:/ 18 board n /bo:d/ 5 board pen /'bo:d pen/ 5 boarding /'bo:dm/ 56

boarding card /'bo:din ka:d/ 56

boat /boot/ 36 boiled /boild/ 28 boiling /'boilin/ 16 book v /bok/ 30, 54, 55 bookshelf /'bokfelf/ 41 boots /bu:ts/ 18

boots /bu:ts/ 18 border /'bo:də(r)/ 34 boring /'bo:riŋ/ 48

born as in be born /bo:n/ 10

borrow /'borao/ 63 boss /bos/ 44 bottle /'botl/ 26, 28

bottom (= part of the body) /'botəm/ 12 bottom (= the lowest part) /'botəm/ 59

bowl /baul/ 28 box /boks/ 26

box as in letter box /boks/ 59 boyfriend /'boyfrend/ 10, 15

Brazil /brəˈzɪl/ 4 Brazilian /brəˈzɪliən/ 4 bread /bred/ 26, 27 break v /breɪk/ 11, 67 break n /breɪk/ 79

breakfast /'brekfast/ 17,79

breeze /bri:z/ 21 bridge /brid3/ 35 bring /brii/ 63 Britain /'britn/ 4

broadband /'bro:dbænd/ 47



## Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

brother /'braðə(r)/ 10 brother-in-law /'braðər in lo:/ 10 brown /braon/ 13, 18, 27 brush /bras/ 40 builder /'bildə(r)/ 44 building /'bildin/ 35, 45 bureau de change /bjoarao da 'sa:nz/ 59 bus /bas/ 29 bus driver /'bas draivə(r)/ 44 bus stop /'bas stop/ 29 business studies /'biznos stadiz/ 43 businessman /'biznəsmən/ 43, 44 businesswoman /'biznəswomən/ 43, 44 busy (= a lot of things happening) /'bizi/ 32, 35 busy (= a lot of things to do) /'bizi/ 64 busy (= engaged) /'bizi/ 69 but /bat, bat/ 77 butcher's /'but[əz/ 37 butter /'batə(r)/ 26 buy /bai/ 20 by /bai/ 51 bye bye, bye /'bai bai, bai/ 60

CD /si: 'di:/ 5 CD player /si: 'di: pleia(r)/ 5 cabbage /'kæbidʒ/ 25 cake /keik/ 26 call as in last call /ko:1/56 call v /k3:1/69 call someone back /kol samwan 'bæk/ 69 called /kɔ:ld/ 7 camera as in speed camera /'kæmərə/ 69 camping /'kæmpɪŋ/ 50 can v (= be able to) /kæn, kən/ 19, 66 can n = container / kan / 26can v (= permission) /kæn, kən/ 63 can v (= request) /k:en, kən/ 59, 63, 69 Canada /'kænədə/ 4 Canadian /kəˈneɪdiən/ 4 Cantonese /kæntəˈniːz/ 4 capital /'kæpɪtl/ 34 cappuccino /kæpə't [i:nəu/ 27 car park /'ka: pa:k/ 32 card as in boarding card /ka:d/ 56 card as in credit card /ka:d/ 19 card as in debit card /ka:d/ 20 cards /ka:dz/ 5() carpet /'ka:pit/ 41 carriage /'kærɪdʒ/ 30 carrot /'kærət/ 25 carry /'kæri/ 11 carry on (with something) /kæri 'on (wið samθιη)/ 73 carton /'ke:tn/ 26

cartoon /ke:'tu:n/ 52

 $\cosh n / \frac{kre}{20}$ 

cash desk /'kaef desk/ 19 cash machine /'kæſ məʃi:n/ 59 cassette player /kəˈset pleiə(r)/ 5 castle /'ke:sl/ 35 casual /'kæʒuəl/ 19 catch /kæts/ 30 cathedral /kə'0i:drəl/ 35 cauliflower /'kpliflaua(r)/ 25 ceiling /'si:luy/ 41 celebrity /səˈlebrəti/ 53 cellist /'tselist/ 51 cello /'tselau/ 51 Central America /sentral a merika/ 4 central heating /sentral 'hi:tɪŋ/ 55 centre as in shopping centre /'sentə(r)/ 37 centre as in town centre /'senta(r)/ 38 century /'sentsori/ 74 certainly /'s3:tnli/ 28 chair /tsea(r)/ 5 change n /tseind3/ 20 change v /tseind3/ 30.59 change places /tseind3 'pleisiz/ 63 changeable /'tfeind3abl/ 21 changing room /'tfeindzin ru:m/ 19 charge /tsa:d3/ 59 chart as in singles chart /tfa:t/ 51 chat /tfæt/ 47 chatroom /'tfætru:m/ 47 cheap /tsi:p/ 19 check as in check your emails /tfek/ 47 check-in, check-in desk /'tsek in, 'tsek in desk/ 56 checkout /'tsekaot/ 37 cheek /tsi:k/ 12 cheers /tʃɪəz/ 61 cheese /tsi:z/ 26 chef /sef/ 44 chemist /'kennst/ 22 chemist's /'kemists/ 22, 23, 37 chemistry /'kemistri/ 42 cheque /tfek/ 20) cherry /'t feri/ 25 chest /tsest/ 12 chest of drawers /tsest av 'dra:z/ 40 chicken /'t[ikin/ 24 child /tsaild/ 13 children /'tsildren/ 8, 13 chilli /'tʃıli/ 25 chin /tsin/ 12 China /'tsamə/ 4 Chinese /tsar'ni:z/ 4 chips /tsips/ 28 chocolate /'t[pklət/ 26 choose /tsuz/ 37 Christmas /'krɪsməs/ 3 church /tsats/ 35



### Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

cinema /'sɪnəmə/ 50,52 circle v /'s3:kl/ Starter city /'sıti/ 35 classical /'klæsikl/ 50, 51 clean v /kli:n/ 17, 39, 40 clean adj /kli:n/ 35 cleaner /'kli:nə(r)/ 44 clear /klia(r)/ 70 clever /'klevə(r)/ 14 click on something /'klik on samθin/ 46 client /'klarant/ 45 climb /klaım/ 11 clock as in o'clock /klok/ 2, 30 close v /klauz/ 11, 62 closed as inflight closed /kləuzd/ 56 closest friend /klausist 'frend/ 15 cloud /klaud/ 21 cloudy /'klaudi/ 21 clove /klauv/ 25 coast /kəust/ 34 coat /koot/ 18 code /kaud/ 69 coffee /'kpfi/ 27 coffee table /'kpfi teibl/ 41 coin /kɔɪn/ 20 cold adj /kauld/ 21 cold n /kəuld/ 22 colleague /'kpli:g/ 45 collect (= keep together) /kə'lekt/ 5() collect (= pick up) /kə'lekt/ 56 college /'kplid3/ 42 colour /'kʌlə(r)/ 13 comb /kəum/ 4() come from /'kam from, from/ 4,8 come round /knm 'raund/ 17, 64 comedy /'kpmədi/ 52 comfortable /'kamf(a)tabl/ 19 commission /kəˈmɪ[n/ 59 common /'kpmən/ 70 company /'knmpəni/ 45 complete v /kəm'pli:t/ Starter complete opposites /kəmpli:t 'ppəzits/ 14 composer /kəmˈpəuzə(r)/ 51 computer game /kəm'pju:tə qeim/ 50 computer science /kəmpju:tə 'saiəns/ 43 concert /'kpnsət/ 51 conditioning as in air conditioning /kənˈdı∫ənıŋ/ 55 conductor /kənˈdʌktə(r)/ 51 confusing /kənˈfju:zɪŋ/ 70 congratulations /kəngrætʃu'leɪʃnz/ 61 continue (at school) /kəntınju: (ət 'sku:l)/ 42 convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ 37 cook v /kok/ 39 cooked /kukt/ 25 cooker /'kukə(r)/ 39

cooking /'kokin/ 50 cool /ku:l/ 21 copy n, v /'kopi/ 46 corner /'kɔ:nə(r)/ 31 correct v /kəˈrekt/ Starter. 7 cosmopolitan /kpzmə'pplitən/ 35 cost v /kpst/ 20 cotton wool /kptn 'wol/ 23 cough /kpf/ 22 could (= permission) /kod/ 63 could (= request) /kod/ 7, 23, 63 could (= suggestion) /kod/ 64 countryside /'kantrisaid/ 36 couple (= two people in a relationship) /'kapl/ 15 couple as in a couple of minutes /'kapl/ 27 courgette /koə'zet/ 25 course (= of study) /ko:s/ 43 course (= part of a meal) /kɔ:s/ 28 court /ko:t/ 49 cousin /'kazn/ 10 cow /kao/ 24 crab /kræb/ 24 crazy /'kreizi/ 70 cream adj /kri:m/ 18 cream n / kri:m / 23credit card /'kredit ka:d/ 19, 20 croissant /'kwaeson/ 27 crop /krop/ 36 cross out /krps 'aut/ Starter crossing as in pedestrian crossing /'krosin/ 32 crowded /'kraodid/ 35 cucumber /'kju:knmbə(r)/ 25 cup /knp/ 39 cupboard /'knbad/ 39 curly /'ka:li/ 13 currency /'karansi/ 54, 59 curtain /'k3:tn/ 41 cushion /'kosn/ 41 customer /'kastəmə(r)/ 19,23 customs /'kastəmz/ 56 cut (= make a wound) /knt/ 23 cut (= remove) /knt/ 46 Czech /tjek/ 4 Czech Republic /tsek ri'pablik/ 4

DVD player /di: vi: 'di: pleɪə(r)/ 41 dad /dæd/ 10 damp /dæmp/ 21 dance /do:ns/ 11 dangerous /'deɪndʒərəs/ 35 dark /do:k/ 13, 18 data /deɪtə/ 47 date /deɪt/ 3, 47, 74 date of birth /deɪt əv 'bɜ:θ/ 9 daughter /'dɔ:tə(r)/ 10 day /deɪ/ 3, 45



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

day as in have a nice day /dei/ 61 daytime /'dertam1/ 9 dead /ded/ 70 debit card /'debit ka:d/ 20 declare as in nothing to declare /di'klea(r)/ 33 definite article /defmət 'a:tıkl/ 6 degree /di'qri:/ 43 delayed /di'leid/ 56 delete /dr'li:t/ 47 deli(catessen) /'deli, delikə'tesən/ 37 delicious /dr/lr (əs/ 55 deliver  $\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{\mathbf{r}} = \frac{37.59}{37.59}$ dentist /'dentist/ 44 departed /di'pa:tid/ 56 department store /di'pa:tmont sto:(r)/ 37 departure /dr'pa:t[a(r)/ 56 departures /di'pa:t[əz/ 56 design /dr'zaın/ 45 design and technology /dızaın ən tek'npləd3i/ 42 desk /desk/ 5, 4() desk as in cash desk /desk/ 19 dessert /di'z3:t/ 28 details /'di:terlz/ 55 diary /'daɪəri/ 75 dictionary /'dık [ənri/ 5 die /dai/ 53 difference /'diffrans/ 7 different /'difrant/ Starter dining room /'damin ru:m/ 38 dinner /'dɪnə(r)/ 17, 79 direct /dəˈrekt, dai-, di-/ 30 director /də'rektə(r), dai-, di-/ 52 dirty /'da:ti/ 35 disagree /disə'qri:/ 68 disaster /di'za:sto(r)/ 53 discuss /di'skas/ 45 dishwasher /'difwofa(r)/ 39 disk /disk/ 46 disturb as in please do not disturb /di'sta:b/ 33 divorced /di'vo:st/ 15 do as in do a degree, do research /du:/ 43 do as in do homework /du:/ 42 do as in do the shopping, do the ironing /du:/ 17, 37, 39 doas in do your hair /du:/ 40 do as in How do you do? /du:/ 60 do as in What do you do? /du:/ 8, 17 do the ironing /du: ði 'arənın/ 39 do the shopping /du: ðə 'ʃppɪŋ/ 17, 37, 39 do well /du: 'wel/ 42 doctor /'dpktə(r)/ 43 document /'dok jamant/ 46 dog /dpg/ 36 don't worry /'doont wari/ 66 door as in front door /do:(r)/ 38

double / dabl/ / double room /'dabl ru:m/ 55 down as in go down /daon/ 76 download /daun'laud/ 47, 51 downstairs /daon'steaz/ 38 draw /dra:/ 49 drawers as in chest of drawers /dra:z/ 4() drawing /'dro::n/ 50 dress /dres/ 18 drink n /drink/ 79 drive /draw/ 32 driver /'draivə(r)/ 44 drop /drop/ 11 drums /dramz/ 51 drummer /'drama(r)/ 51 dry /drai/ 21 duck /dnk/ 24 during the week /djoərin ðə 'wi:k/ 17

each /i:tʃ/ 20 each other /i:tf 'Aða(r)/ 15 ear /19(r)/ 12 early as in early twenties /'a:li/ 17 earn /3:n/ 20, 45 east /i:st/ 34, 35 Easter /'i:stə(r)/ 61 economics /i:kəˈnonuks/ 43 economist /1'kpnəmist/ 43 egg /eq/ 26 Egypt /'i:d3ipt/ 4 Egyptian /i'dʒip[n/ 4 elderly /'eldəli/ 13 electric razor /ılektrık 'reizə(r)/ 4() else as in anything else? /els/ 26 email address /'i:meil ədres/ 9, 47 embarrassed /im'bærəst/ 16 empty adj, v /'empti/ 39 en suite /pn 'switt/ 55 end /end/ 46 engaged /m'geid3d/ 69 engine as in search engine /'end3in/ 47 engineer /endʒi'niə(r)/ 43 engineering /endʒi'niərin/ 43 England /'ingland/ 4 English /'mglis/ 4 enjoy /in'd331/ 48 enjoyable /m'dʒəɪəbl/ 48 enormous /i'no:mas/ 34 enter /'entə(r)/ 20 entrance /'entrans/ 33 entry as in no entry /'entri/ 33 envelope /'envələup/ 59 equipment /i'kwipment/ 49 especially /1'spe[əli/ 71 espresso /e'spresau/ 27 essay /'eset/ 43



## Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

Europe /'juarap/ 4 even /'i:vn/ 71 evening /'i:vnin/ 2, 60, 75 event /i'vent/ 53 ever /'evə(r)/ 72 every /'evri/ 17, 29 exactly /ig'zæktl'i/ 8 exams /ig'zæmz/ 42 ex-boyfriend /eks 'boifrend/ 15 excellent /'eksələnt/ 68 exchange rate /iks'tfcmd3 reit/ 59 excited /ik'saitid/ 16 exciting /ik'saitin/ 52 excuse me /ik'skju:z mi:/ 29, 31 ex-girlfriend /eks 'g3:lfrend/ 15 ex-husband /eks 'hazband/ 15 exit /'eksrt/ 33 expensive /ik'spensiv/ 19 explain /ik'splein/ 7 extremely /ık'stri:mli/ 71 ex-wife /eks 'waif/ 15 eye /ai/ 12 face /feis/ 12 facilities /fə'sılətiz/ 55 fact /fækt/ 35 factory /'fæktəri/ 45 fail an exam /feil ən ig'zæm/ 42 fallover /fo: 1 'auva(r)/ 11,73 false /fo:ls, fols/ Starter family name /'fæməli neun/ 8 family tree /fæməli 'tri:/ 10 famous /'fermas/ 34, 51 fantastic /fæn'tæstik/ 48 far /fa:(r)/32,62Far East /fa:r 'i:st/ 4 fare /fep(r)/20, 30farm /fa:m/ 36 farmer  $\frac{1}{100}$  farmer  $\frac{1}{100}$  farmer  $\frac{1}{100}$ fast /fa:st/ 30, 47 fasten /'fo:sn/ 56 fat /fæt/ 13 father /'f'o:ðə(r)/ 10 favourite /'feivərit/ 48 feel /fi:1/ 16,22 feet //i:1/ 12 few as in a few /fju:/ 36 field /fi:ld/ 36 fill /fd/ 37 fillet /'filit/ 28 film /film/ 17, 52 final score /faml 'sko:(r)/ 49 finally /'faməli/ 78

fine (= OK) / fam / 60, 63fingers /'fingez/ 12 finish /'finis/ 17, 63 fireplace /'faraplers/ 41 first adv /f3:st/ 78 first adj /f3:st/ 8 first half /fa:st 'ha:f/ 49 first of all /sist av 'a:1/ 78 firstly /'fa:stli/ 78 fish /fis/ 24 fishing /'fifin/ 50 fit /fit/ 19 flat adj /flæt/ 69 flat n /flæt/ 38 flatmate /'flætmeit/ 15 flight /flart/ 54, 56 flight closed /flait 'klauzd/ 56 floor (= level of a building) /flo:(r)/38floor (= surface you walk on) /flo:(r)/ 41 flower /'flava(r)/ 36 flower arranging /'flavor oreindzin/ 50 flu /flu:/ 22 fly /flai/ 57 fog /fog/ 21 foggy /'fogi/ 21 folder (= for holding papers)  $\frac{1}{100} \frac{1}{100} \frac{1}$ folder (= on a computer)  $\frac{1}{100} \frac{1}{100}  foot /fot/ 12 football /'fotba:1/ 49 for /fo:(r), fa(r)/ 75 for a while /for a 'wail/ 22 forecast as in weather forecast /'fo:ka:st/ 53 foreign /'foran/ 54 forename /'fɔ:neim/ 9 forget /fa'get/ 67 fork /f5:k/ 28 fortunately /'fo:tjenetli/ 43 forward v /'fo:wad/ 47 France /fra:ns/ 4 free /fri:/ 20 freezer /'fri:zə(r)/ 39 freezing /'fri:zin/ 16, 21 French /frent[/ 4 fresh /fres/ 25 fresh food /fref 'fu:d/ 36 fridge /frid3/ 39 fried /fraid/ 28 friend as in best/closest friend /frend/ 15 friendly /'frendli/ 14 frightened /'fraitnd/ 16 frightening /'fraitnin/ 52 from (= origin) /from, from/ 4 from (= time) /from, from/ 45 front door /frant 'do:(r)/ 38 frozen /'frauzn/ 25



frying pan /'fram pæn/ 39

find /faind/ 54

find out /faind 'aut/ 53, 73

fine (= in good health) /fain/ 60

### Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

full /fol/ 37, 39

full-time /'fol taım/ 45 fun /fan/ 14, 48 funny /'fʌni/ 14, 52 furniture /'fa:nit[a(r)/ 41 GP (general practitioner) /dʒi: 'pi:, dʒenrəl præk'tıʃənə(r)/ 22 gallery as in art gallery /'gæləri/ 58 game /geim/ 49 garage /'gæra:z, 'gæridz/ 38 garden /'qa:dn/ 38 gardening /'ga:dnin/ 50 garlic /'go:lrk/ 25 gate /qert/ 56 gents /dzents/ 33 geography /dʒi'pgrəfi/ 42 German /'dʒ3:mən/ 4 Germany /'dʒɜ:məni/ 4 get (= arrive) / qet / 30, 31, 80get (= become) /get/ 16, 80 get (= buy) / get / 80get (= fetch) /qet/ 69 get (= obtain) /get/ 42, 80 get (= receive)  $\frac{1}{2}$  47, 80 get (= travel by) /get/ 29, 30, 57, 80 get a grade /get ə 'greid/ 42 get a job /get a 'd3pb/ 43 get an email /get an 'i:meil/ 47 get divorced /get di'vo:st/ 10 get dressed /qet 'drest/ 17 get lost /qet 'lost/ 58 get married /get 'mærid/ 10, 15 get off /get 'pf/ 11, 29, 30, 56 get on /get 'pn/ 11, 29, 30, 56, 73 get on with someone /qet 'pn wið samwan/ 15 get to know someone /get to 'nou samwan/ 15 get to work /get to 'w3:k/ 17 get up /qet 'Ap/ 17 girlfriend /'q3:lfrend/ 10, 15 give /giv/ 12, 15, 72 give someone a hand /qrv samwan a 'hænd/ 66 give something up /giv samθin 'ap/ 73 glass /glass/ 28 glasses /'gla:siz/ 18 gloves /glavz/ 18 go (= do something) /qəu/ 17, 22, 50 go (= move or travel)  $\frac{1}{300}$  31, 33 go ahead /gao a'hed/ 63 go and see /gou on 'si:/ 22 go back /gao 'bæk/ 73 go down /gao 'daon/ 76 go for a walk /gao far a 'wa:k/ 57 go on a (guided) tour /gao on a (gaidid) 'toa(r)/ 58 go online /qəu on'laın/ 47

go out /gao 'aut/ 17, 73 go out for (a meal/a drink) /gao 'aut fa(r)/ 64, 73 go out with someone /qəu 'aut wið samwan/ 15 go sightseeing /gəo 'sartsi::ŋ/ 58 go to primary school /goo to 'praimori sku:l/ 42 go up /gəu 'np/ 73 goal /goul/ 49 good afternoon /'qod a:ftənu:n/ 60 good at something /'god ət sʌmθɪŋ/ 42 good evening /'qud i:vnin/ 60 good-looking /god 'lokin/ 13 good luck /'god lak/ 61 good morning /'god mo:nin/ 60 good to meet you /god to 'mi:t ju:/ 60 goodbye /qud'bai/ 60 goodnight /god'nart/ 60, 61 grade /greid/ 42 graduaten /'grædzuət/ 43 graduate v /'grædzueit/ 43 grams /græmz/ 26 granddaughter /'grændɔ:tə(r)/ 10 grandfather /'grænfe:ðə(r)/ 10 grandmother /'qrænmʌðə(r)/ 10 grandson /'grænsʌn/ 10 grapes / greips/ 25 grass /grass/ 36 great /greit/ 55, 64, 65 Great Britain / great britn/ 4 Greece /gri:s/ 4 Greek /gri:k/ 4 green /gri:n/ 18 grey /qrei/ 13, 18 grilled /grild/ 28 ground floor /graund 'flo:(r)/ 38 group /qru:p/ 51 grow /grau/ 36 grow up /grao 'Ap/ 73 guests /gests/ 55 guide /gard/ 58 guidebook /'qardbok/ 58 guitar  $\frac{q_1}{ta:(r)}$  50, 51 gym /dʒun/ 17, 50, 55 hair  $\frac{hea(r)}{12,40}$ 

hairdresser /'heədresə(r)/ 44
half /ha:f/ 26, 49
half past /'ha:f pa:st/ 2
half price /ha:f 'prais/ 20
half-time /ha:f 'taim/ 49
ham /hæm/ 24
hand (= part of the body) /hænd/ 12
hand as in give someone a hand /hænd/ 66
hand luggage /'hænd lʌgɪdʒ/ 56
handbag /'hændbæg/ 18
hands as in shake hands /hændz/ 60

### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

happen / næpən/ 53 happy /'hæpi/ 16 happy birthday /hæpi 'b3:0dei/ 61 happy Christmas /hæpi 'krısməs/ 61 happy New Year /hæpi nju: 'jiə(r)/ 61 hard adv /ha:d/ 42 hard copy /ha:d 'kppi/ 46 hard drive /ha:d 'draw/ 46 hardly ever /ha:dli 'evə(r)/ 17 hardworking /ha:d'w3:kin/ 14 hat /hæt/ 18 hate /heit/ 48 have /hæv, hav/ 79 have (= do something) /hæv/ 17, 40, 56, 69 have (= eat/drink) /hæv/ 28 have used in greetings /hæv/ 61 have a baby /hæv ə 'berbi/ 15 have a seat /hæv ə 'si:t/ 27 have got /hæv 'qpt/ 10, 13, 21, 26, 79, 80 have got to /hæv 'qpt tu:, tə/ 60 have to /'hæf tu:, tə/ 45 head /hed/ 12 headache /'hedeik/ 22 healthy /'helθi/ 36 hear /hi = (r)/53heating as in central heating /'hittin/ 55 heavy /'hevi/ 21 height /hart/ 13 hello /he'lau/ 60 help /help/ 19,66 helpful /'helpfl/ 55, 70 hi. hi there /hai, 'hai ðeə(r)/ 60 high /hai/ 34, 45 hill /lul/ 36 hire /'haɪɔ(r)/ 54 historic /hi'storik/ 35 history /'hist(ə)ri/ 42 hob /hob/ 39 hobby /'hobi/ 50 hockey as in ice hockey /'hoki/ 49 hold /hauld/ 11 holiday /'holadei/ 54, 61, 79 home /haom/ 38 homework /homws:k/ 39, 42 hope /haup/ 60) horrible /'horabl/ 14, 19 horror /'hora(r)/ 52 horse /ho:s/ 36 hospital /'hospitl/ 45 hot /hpt/ 21 hours /'avaz/ 45 house /haos/ 38 househusband /'haoshazband/ 44 housewife /'haoswaif/ 44 How about you? /hao əbaot 'ju:/ 62

How are you? /nao a jui/ bu How do you do? /hao do jo 'du:/ 60 how far /'hao fa:(r)/ 32,62 how long (= length) /'hav lon/ 13 how long (= time) /'hao lon/ 29, 62 how many /'hao meni/ 26, 62 how much /'hao mats/ 13, 26, 45, 59 how often /'hau pfn, pftən/ 62 howold /'hao əold/ 8, 10 however /hao'evə(r)/ 77 humid /'hju:mid/ 21 hundred /'handred/ 1 Hungarian /hʌŋˈqeəriən/ 4 Hungary /'hʌŋqəri/ 4 hungry /hangri/ 16 hurt /hart/ 22 husband /'hʌzbənd/ 10 hypermarket /'haipəma:kit/ 37

ICT (information communication technology) /ai si: 'ti: (ɪnfəmeɪʃn kəmiu:nikeɪʃn tek'nɒlədʒi)/ IT (information technology) /ai 'ti: (infəmeisn tek'nolədzi)/ 42 ice /ais/ 21 ice cream /ais 'kri:m/ 28 ice hockey /'ais hpki/ 49 icon /'aikon/ 46 icv /'aisi/ 21 I'd like /aid 'laik/ 26, 27 I'd like to /aid 'laik tu:, tə/ 55 I'd love to /ard 'lav tu:, tə/ 64 idea /aı'dıə/ 65 if /rf/ 78 ill as in be/feel ill /11/16.22I'll leave it/them /ail 'li:v it, ðəm/ 19 I'm afraid /aim ə'freid/ 55, 63, 64 I'm afraid not /aim əfreid 'not/ 55 impossible /im'posəbl/ 70 in (= place) / m / 76in (= taking part) /m/ 52 in (= time) /m/2, 74 in as in Who's in it? /in/ 52

in front of /in 'frant əv/ 76
in love /in 'lav/ 16
in (my twenties, etc.) /in (mai 'twentiz)/ 13
in order to /in 'ɔ:də tə/ 77
in the north /in ðə 'nɔ:0/ 34
in the paper /in ðə 'peipə(r)/ 53
inbox /'inboks/ 47
included as in included in the price
/in'klu:did/ 55
indefinite article /indefinat 'a:tikl/ 6
India /'india/ 4

in a minute /m ə 'mınıt/ 75

in advance /m əd'vo:ns/ 30



How are things? /hao  $\Rightarrow \theta_{inz}/60$ 

## Sara.English.School www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

Indian /'indian/ 4 indoors /in'do:z/ 37 industrial /in'dastrial/ 35 information /infə'mei[n/ 8 inland /m'laend/ 34 inside /in'said/ 38 instrument as in musical instrument /'instramant/ 50 insurance /m'sorans/ 54 intelligent /in'tclidgənt/ 14 interested /'introstid/ 48 interesting /'introstin/ 35, 48 internet /'intenet/ 47 internet access /'internet ækses/ 55 into /'intu:, 'intə/ 59,76,77 invite /in'vait/ 64 Ireland /'aiələnd/ 4 ironing /'aiənii/ 39 irregular /i'reqjələ(r)/ 6 irritating /'irriteitin/ 70 Italian /r'tæliən/ 4 Italy /'ıtəli/ 4

jacket /'dzækit/ 18 jam /dzaem/ 26 Japan /dʒə'pæn/ 4 Japanese /daæpəˈniːz/ 4 jar /d3a:(r)/ 26 jeans /dzi:nz/ 18 job /d3pb/ 8, 42 journalism /'d33:nəlızm/ 43 journalist /'d33:nəlist/ 43 journey /'d33:ni/ 30.61, 79 juice as in orange juice /dzu:s/ 27 jump /dʒʌmp/ 11 jumper /'dʒʌmpə(r)/ 18 junction /'dʒʌŋk∫n/ 32 junk /dznijk/ 47 just as in just keep going /d3Ast/ 31 just a moment /'dʒʌst ə məomənt/ 69 just after /'d3Ast a:ftə(r)/ 2 just over /'dʒʌst əuvə(r)/ 26, 35 just under /'dzst andə(r)/ 26.35

keen as in keen on something /ki:n/ 48
keep (= put/store) /ki:p/ 46
keep going /ki:p 'gəoɪŋ/ 31
keyboard /ˈki:bə:d/ 46
kilo /ˈki:ləo/ 26
kilometres /kɪlˈəmi:təz, kɪˈlɒmɪtəz/ 31, 34
kind adj /kaɪnd/ 14
kind as in that's very kind of you /kaɪnd/ 66
kind as in What kind...? /kaɪnd/ 52, 62
kitchen /ˈkɪtʃɪn/ 38
knee /ni:/ 12
knife /naɪf/ 28

know /nəu/ 7, 31 know as in get to know /nəu/ 15 Korean /kəˈriːən/ 4

ladies /leidiz/ 33 lake /leik/ 36 lamb /læm/ 24 lamp /læmp/ 41 land /lænd/ 56 language /længwid3/ 4 lane /lcm/ 32 laptop /'læptop/ 46 large /la:d<sub>3</sub>/ 19 last adj /la:st/ 30 last v /lo:st/ 43 last night, last week, last year, etc. /lo:st 'nait, 'wi:k, 'jiə(r)/ 75 last stop /la:st 'stop/ 29 late as in I get up late /lert/ 17 late as in Sorry I'm late /leit/ 67 late (fifties) /left ('fiftiz)/ 13 later as in See you later /'leitə(r)/ 60, 75 laugh /lo:f/ 14 law /lo:/ 43 lawyer /'la:jə(r)/ 43 lazy /'lerzi/ 14 lead v /li:d/ 49 lead singer /li:d 'sinə(r)/ 51 league /li:g/ 49 leave as in I'll leave it/them /li:v/ 19 leave v (of a train) /li:v/ 30, 42 leave home /li:v 'həom/ 17 leave school /li:v 'sku:l/ 42 left /left/ 31 leg /leg/ 12, 22 lemon /'leman/ 25 lend /lend/ 63 length as in medium-length /len0/ 13 lesson /'lesn/ 42 let as in let me /let/ 66 let's /lets/ 65 letter /'letə(r)/ 59 letter box /'letə boks/ 59 lettuce /'letis/ 25 level /'levl/ 9 library /'laɪbrəri/ 43 lie /laɪ/ 57 lie down /lai 'daon/ 11, 22, 73 lift n /lift/ 38 lift as in give someone a lift /lift/ 66 light adj /lant/ 13, 18 light n /lait/ 41 lightning /'lartmin/ 21 like v /laik/ 48 like as in What's hc/she/it like? /lark/ 14, 23, 62

like as in would like /lask/ 26, 27, 28, 55, 64



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

limit as in speed limit /'limit/ 32 line /lam/ 68 lip /lip/ 12 listen to /'lisn ta/ 5(), 53 literature /'litrat[a(r)/ 42 litre /'li:tə(r)/ 26 little /'litl/ 19 little as in a little /'litl/ 71 living room /'livin ru:m/ 38 location /lau'ker[n/ 35 lonely /'launli/ 36 long adj /lon/ 13, 19 long as in How long...? /lon/ 29, 62 long as in a metre long /lon/ 29 long hours /lon 'aoəz/ 45 look /lok/ 19 look after /luk 'a:ftə/ 36 look round /lok 'raund/ 58 look something up /lok samθιη 'ap/ 73 loose /lu:s/ 19 lorry driver /'lpri draivə(r)/ 44 lose /lu:z/ 49, 67 lot as in a lot, a lot of /lot/ 21 lots as in lots to do /lots/ 35 lottery /'lotəri/ 20 love /lav/ 48 love story /'lav sto:ri/ 52 lovely /'lavli/ 19,61 low as in low wages /lou/ 45 luck as in good luck /lnk/ 61 luggage /'lagid3/ 56 lunch /lants/ 79

MA (Master of Arts) /em 'ei (maistər əv aits)/ 43 MP3 player /em pi: 'θri: pleiə(r)/ 47 Mr /'mistə(r)/ 9 Mrs /'misiz/ 9 Ms /maz/ 9 MSc (Master of Science) /em es 'si: (mo:stər əv 'saıəns)/ 43 machine as in cash machine /məˈʃiːn/ 59 machine as in washing machine /məˈʃiːn/ 39 mad /mæd/ 70 magazine /mæqə'zi:n/ 53 main course /'mein ko:s/ 28 main road /mem 'roud/ 32 major /'meidzə(r)/ 34 make (= perform an action) /mesk/ 45 make (= produce) /meik/ 39, 46 make-up /'meik Ap/ 40 manager / mænidʒə(r)/ 43 Mandarin /'mændərın/ 4 mango /ˈmæŋqəʊ/ 25 many as in how many /'meni/ 26, 61 map /mæp/ 58 marital status /'mæritl steitəs/ 9

mark /ma:k/ 42 market /'ma:kit/ 35.37 married /'mærid/ 8 married as in get married /marrid/ 10, 15 match n = game / match / 49matches n (= to start a fire) /'mæt [rz/ 26] maths (mathematics) /mæθs/ 42 matter as in it doesn't matter /'mætə(r)/ 67 matter as in What's the matter? / mata(r) / 16.22maybe /'meibi/ 65 meal /mi:1/ 28, 64 mean /mi:n/ 7 meaning /'mi:nɪŋ/ 7 meat /mi:t/ 24 media /'mi:diə/ 53 medicine (= subject of study) / medsn/ 43 medicine (e.g. aspirin) /'medsn, 'medisin/ 23 medium (= size) /'mi:diam/ 19 medium (= steak) /'mi:diam/ 28 medium-length /mi:diam leng/ 13 medium-sized /'mi:diam sazzd/ 35 meet (= come together) /mi:t/ 45 meet (= for the first time) /mi:t/ 15.60 meet as in nice/good to meet you /mi:t/ 60 meeting /mi:tm/ 45 melon /melan/ 25 memory stick / memori stik/ 46 menu /'menju:/ 28 merry Christmas /meri 'krısməs/ 61 message /'mesid3/ 47 message as intext message /'mesid3/ 69 Mexican / meksikən/ 4 Mexico /'meksikəu/ 4 microwave /'markrawery/ 39 midday /mid'dei/ 2 middle /'midl/ 46 middle-aged /midl 'eid3d/ 13 Middle East /midl 'i:st/ 4 midnight /'midnait/ 2 might /mait/ 54 mile /mail/ 35 miles an hour /mailz ən 'avə(r)/ 32 milk /milk/ 26, 27 million /'milian/ 1 mind as in Do you mind if...? /maind/ 63 mind as in never mind /maind/ 55, 67 mineral water /'minaral wa:ta(r)/ 28 minibar /'miniba:(r)/ 55 mirror /'mirə(r)/ 40 miss v /mis/ 30 Miss /mis/ 9 missing /'misin/ Starter mistake /mi'steik/ Starter mixed salad /mikst 'sælad/ 28 mobile number /'maobail namba(r)/ 69



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

modern / modn/ 35, 38 modern languages /modn 'længwidziz/ 42 moment as in at the moment /'maymant/ 69, 75 moment as in just a moment /'maymant/ 69 monitor /'monitə(r)/ 46 month /man0/ 3 more as in some more /mp:(r)/28morning /'mɔ:nɪŋ/ 2 morning as in good morning /'mɔ:nɪŋ/ 60 mosque /mosk/ 35 most /maust/ 53 mother /'mʌðə(r)/ 10 mother tongue /niaða 'tan/ 9 motorway /'məutəwei/ 32 mountain / mauntan/ 34 mouse /maus/ 46 mouse mat /'maus mæt/ 46 moustache /məˈsta: [/ 13 mouth /maoθ/ 12 move /mu:v/ 46 movie /'mu:vi/ 52 much as in how much /mat [/ 13, 26, 45, 59] much as in nothing much /mats/ 53 mum /m/m/ 10 museum /mju:'zi:əm/ 35, 58 mushroom /'masru:m/ 25 mnsic / mju:zik/ 42, 50 musical /'mju:zikl/ 50 mussels /'maslz/ 24 must /'mast/ 60

name as in family name, first name /nem/ 8 napkin /'næpkm/ 28 narrow /'nærəu/ 70 nationality /næfə'nælıti/ 4 near /nia(r)/ 29.76 nearest /'niarist/ 62 nearly /'nıəli/ 2 necessary /'nesəsəri/ 70 neck /nek/ 12 need /ni:d/ 19, 23, 66 neighbours /'neibəz/ 38 nephew /'nefju:/ 10 nervous /'na:vəs/ 16 net /net/ 49 never /'nevə(r)/ 17 never mind /'nevə mamd/ 55,67 New Year /nju: 'jiə(r)/ 61 New Year's Day /nju: jiəz 'dei/ 3 news /nju:z/ 53 newsagent's /'nju:zeid3ənts/ 37 newspaper /'nju:speipə(r)/ 53 next (of a train) /nekst/ 30 next stop /'nekst stop/ 29 next to /'nekst tu:, tə/ 76 next week /nekst 'wi:k/ 75

nice /nais/ 14, 19, 79 nice as in have a nice day/evening /nais/ 61 nice to meet you /nais to 'mi:t ju:/ 60 niece /ni:s/ 10 night (= saying goodnight) /naɪt/ 60 night as in a night /natt/ 2 night as in €60 a night /nart/ 55 night as in last night /nart/ 75 nightlife /'nartlarf/ 35 nil /mil/ 49 no entry /nəu 'entri/ 33 no exit /nəu 'eksit/ 33 no parking /nəʊ 'pa:kɪn/ 33 no problem /nou 'problam/ 63 no smoking /nau 'smaukin/ 33 noisy /'noizi/ 70 none /nan/ 53 noodles /'nu:dlz/ 26 normally /'no:məli/ 17 north /no:0/ 34.35 North America /no:0 ə'merikə/ 4 north-east /no:0 'i:st/ 35 north-west /no:θ 'west/ 35 Northern Ireland /no:ðən 'aıələnd/ 4 nose /nəʊz/ 12 not bad /npt 'bæd/ 60 notebook /'nautbok/ 5 notes /nauts/ 20, 56 nothing as in there's nothing to do /'ιηλθιη/ 35 nothing much /nλθιη 'mats/ 53 nothing to declare /nλθιη to di'kleo(r)/ 33 noticeboard /'nəutisbo:d/ 5 noun /naun/ 6 number as in phone number /'nambə(r)/ 69 number as in PIN number /'nambə(r)/ 20 number as in wrong number /'nambə(r)/ 69 number 1 (in the singles chart) /nambə 'wan/ 51 nurse /nass/ 44 nursery school /'na:səri sku:l/ 42

occasionally /əˈkeɪʒ(ə)nəli/ 17 occupation /pkiu'per[n/ 9] o'clock (of time) /ə'klok/ 2 o'clock (of a train) /ə'klok/ 30 odd /pd/ 70 of course /av 'ka:s/ 28,63 offer /'pfa(r)/ 66 office as in post office /'pfis/ 59 office as in ticket office /'pfis/ 30 officer as in police officer /'pfisə(r)/ 44 often /'pſn, pſtən/ 17 often as in how often /'ofn, 'often/ 62 oil /oil/ 28 old /auld/ 8.10 olive oil /pliv 'pil/ 26 olives /'plivz/ 26



www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

on (= preposition of place) /pn/ 76
on (= preposition of time) /pn/ 74
on a river $/\text{on } \Rightarrow \text{'riv} \Rightarrow \text{(r)}/35$
on holiday /on 'holader, -di/ 54
on my own /pn mai 'əʊn/ 14
on the coast /pn ŏə 'kəyst/ 34, 35
on the first floor /on do fast 'flo:(r)/ 38
on the internet /on di: 'intent/ 47
on the phone /pn ŏɔ 'fəun/ 69
on time /on 'taım/ 56
on TV/on the radio
/on ti: 'vi:, on ðə 'reıdiəʊ/ 53
on as in What's on? /on/ 52
once /wans/ 17
onion /'ʌnjən/ 25
online /on'lain, 'onlain / 20, 47
only adj /'sonli/ 70
only adv /'aunli/ 71
open /'aupan/ 11, 46, 62
opera singer /'pprə siŋə(r)/ 51
opinion /ə'pın jən/ 35, 53, 68
opposite n /'ppazit/ Starter. 7
opposite prep / ppazit/ 31,76
opposites as in complete opposites /'ppazits/ 14
or so as in for an hour or so /o: 'səʊ/ 57
orange adj /'prind3/ 18
orange n /'prmd <sub>3</sub> / 25
orange juice /'prind3 daus/ 27
orchestra /ˈɔːkɪstrə/ 51
order /'ɔ:də(r)/ 27, 28
order as in in order to /'ɔ:də(r)/ 77
order as in out of order /'ɔ:də(r)/ 29
organize /'ɔ:gənaɪz/ 45
organized /'ɔ:qənaɪzd/ 14
other as in each other $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda \delta_0(r)}}$ 15
out of /'aut av/ 76
out of order /aut av 'a:da(r)/ 33
outdoors /aut'do:z/ 37
outside adv /aot'sard/ 38
outside prep /'aotsard/ 29
oven /'AVII/ 39
over (= above/higher than something)
/'auva(r)/ 76
over (= more than a number, price. etc.)
/'auva(r)/ 26, 35
overtake /əuvəˈteɪk/ 32
overweight /əʊvəˈweɪt/ 13
own v / <del>əun/</del> 36
own as in on my own /əʊn/ 14
PC (personal computer)
/pi: 'si: (p3:sənl kəm'pju:tə)/ 46
PhD (Doctor of Philosophy)
/pi: eɪtʃ ˈdi: (doktər əv fɪˈlɒsəfi)/ 43
p.m. /pix 'em/ 2
nack /næk/ 54

248 WORD LIST

packet /'pækit/ 26 pain /pem/ 22 pair /pea(r)/ 18 palace /'pælis/ 35 pale /peil/ 18 pan as in frying pan /pæn/ 39 paper (= newspaper) /'peipə(r)/ 53 paper as in piece of paper /'perpə(r)/ 5paper shop /'peipə fop/ 37 parcel /'pa:sl/ 59 parents /'pearants/ 10 park n /pa:k/ 35 park v /pa:k/ 38 park as in car park /pa:k/ 32 parking /'pa:kin/ 38.55 part-time adj /'pa:t taim/ 45 participle as in past participle /pa:'tisipl, 'pa:tisipl / 6 particularly /pəˈtɪkjələli/ 71 partner /'pa:tnə(r)/ 15 party /'pa:ti/ 64 pass an exam /pass ən 1q'zæm/ 42 passenger /'pæsindʒə(r)/ 30, 56 passport /'pa:spo:t/ 54 passport control /pa:spo:t kan'traul/ 56 past /pa:st/ 76 past as in five past six /pa:st/ 2 past participle /pa:st pa:'tisipl, pa:st 'pa:tisipl/ 6 pasta /'pæstə/ 26 paste /perst/ 46 path /pa:0/ 36 pavement /'pervmont/ 32 pay /pei/ 19 PE (physical education) /pi: 'i: (fizikl edzu'kei[n]/ 42 peace /pi:s/ 53 peach /pi:ts/ 25 pear /pea(r)/ 25 peas /pi:z/ 25 pedestrian crossing /padestrian 'krosin/ 32 pen /pen/ 5 pen as in board pen /pen/ 5 pencil /'pensl/ 5 pencil sharpener /'pensl sa:pna(r)/ 5 pepper (= spice) /'pep $\Rightarrow$ (r)/ 28 pepper (= vegetable) /'pepa(r)/25per cent /pə 'sent/ 59 perfect /'pa:fikt/ 57 perform /pə'fɔ::in/ 51 perfume /'pa:fju:m/ 40 perhaps /pəˈhæps/ 54.65 person /'pa:sp/ 13 personally /'pa:sənəli/ 68 petrol station /'petral steijn/ 32 pharmacy /'fa:məsi/ 22 phone n, v /faun/ 69



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com



potato /pa'teitau/ 25 prawns /pro:nz/ 24 prefer /prif3:(r)/ 37, 48, 65, 68 preposition /prepəˈzɪʃn/ 6 price /prais/ 20, 55 primary school /'praimeri sku:1/ 42 print /print/ 46 print something out /print sam0in 'aot/ 46 printer /'printə(r)/ 46 printout /'printaot/ 46 private school /'praivat sku:l/ 42 problem as in no problem /'problem/ 63 programme /'proograem/ 53 pronoun /'praonaon/ 6 pronounce /prə'naons/ 7 psychologist /sai'k pladzist/ 43 psychology /sar'kpladzi/ 43 public transport /phblik 'trænspo:t/ 36 puck /pnk/ 49 pull /pol/ 11 pupil /'pju:pl/ 42 purple /'p3:pl/ 18 push /pos/ 11 put (= place) /pot/ 59 put in /pot 'm/ 20 put something away /pot sam0in ə'wei/ 39 put something down /put samθη 'daon/ 11 put something on /put sam0in 'on/ 40, 73

quarter (past/to) /'kwɔ:tə (pa:st/tu:)/ 2 queuc /kju:/ 37 queue here /kju: 'hɪə(r)/ 29 quick /kwɪk/ 47 quiet (= about a person) /'kwaɪət/ 14 quiet (= not busy) /'kwaɪət/ 32, 35 quiet (= not noisy) /'kwaɪət/ 70 quite /kwaɪt/ 48, 71

racket /'rækit/ 49 radiator /'reidieitə(r)/ 41 radio / reidiau/ 53 railway station /'reilwei steisn/ 31 rain n. v /rein/ 21 raincoat /'reinkəot/ 18 rare /reə(r)/ 28 rarely /'reəli/ 17 raw /ro:/ 25 razor /'reizə(r)/ 4() RE (religious education) /a:r 'i: (rılıdzəs edzu'keısın) 42 read /ri:d/ 50 ready /'redi/ 28 really /'ri:əli/ 14, 48, 67, 71 receipt /ri'si:t/ 20 receive /ri'si:v/ 47 reclaim as in baggage reclaim /'ri:klemi/ 56



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

recommend /rekə'mend/ 55, 62 red /red/ 18. refuse /ri'fju:z/ 66 regular /'regiolo(r)/ 6 relationship /ri'leisnsip/ 15 relative /'relativ/ 10 relax /riˈlæks/ 57 relaxed /ri'lækst/ 14 remember /ri'membə(r)/ 7,67 rent /rent/ 57 repair /ri'peə(r)/ 5() reply /ri'plau 47 report 11 /ri'po:t/ 45 report v /ri'po:t/ 53 reporter /ri'po:tə(r)/ 43, 53 research /ri'ss:tf, 'ri:ss:tf/ 43 reserve /ri'z3:v/ 3() resort /rrzo:t/ 57 rest as in have a rest /rest/ 79 results /ri'zalts/ 42 retired /ri'taiəd/ 44 return /rr'ta:n/ 30 review /ri'v ju:/ 52 rice /rais/ 26 rich /rits/ 70 ride /raid/ 11, 36 right (= correct) /rait/ 7 right (= not left) /rait/ 31 right (= OK) / rait / 55ring v (of a bell) /riij/ 29 ring v = phone / rin / 69ring someone back /rin samwan 'bæk/ 69 rink /rink/ 49 ripe /raip/ 26 river /'rivə(r)/ 34 road as in main road /rood/ 32 road sign /rood sam/ 32 roast /raust/ 28 roll /raul/ 27 romantic /rao mæntik/ 52 room service /'ru:m sa:vis/ 55 roundabout /'raondabaot/ 32 route /ru:t/ 29 rubber /'rabə(r)/ 5 rubbish /'rabif/ 38 rubbish bin /'rabij bin/ 39 rude /ru:d/ 67 rug /rnq/ 41 rugby /'ragbi/ 49 ruler /'ru:lə(r)/ 5 run 11 /rnn/ 79 run v /rʌn/ 11, 29 rush hour /'raf aoə(r)/ 32 Russia /'rasa/ 4 Russian /'rnsn/ 4

sad /sæd/ 16 safe /seif/ 35 salad as in mixed salad /'sælad/ 28 salary /'sæləri/ 45 sale /seil/ 33 salmon /'sæmən/ 24 salt /so:lt, splt/ 28 same /seim/ Starter same as in the same to you /seim/ 61 sandals /'sændlz/ 18 sandwich /'sænwitʃ, 'sænwidʒ/ 27 satellite TV /sætəlait ti: 'vi:/ 55 sauce /so:s/ 28 saucepan /'so:spæn/ 39 saucer /'so:so(r)/ 39 Saudi /'saudi/ 4 Saudi Arabia /saudi ə'reibiə/ 4 sausages /'spsadziz/ 24 save (= not waste) /serv/ 20 save (= store) /selv/ 46 say /sei/ 7 scales /skeilz/ 56, 59 scared /skead/ 16 scarf /ska:f/ 18 school /sku:1/ 42 score n, v /sko:(r)/ 49 Scotland /'skptland/ 4 screen /skri:n/ 46 sea /si:/ 57 seafood /'si:fu:d/ 24 search engine /'sa:tf end3m/ 47 season /'si:zn/ 3 seat /si:t/ 27, 30 seat belt /'si:t belt/ 56 secondary school /'sekəndri sku:l/ 42 secretary /'sekrat(a)ri/ 44 see (= meet or visit)  $/\sin / 15$ , 60 see (= watch) /si:/ 17.52.53 See you later /si: ju: 'leitə(r)/ 60, 75 self-employed /self im'ploid/ 44 sell /sel/ 20 send /send/ 45, 47, 59, 69 serious /'særiæs/ 14 service as in room service /'sa:vis/ 55 set /set/ 49 shake hands /feik 'hændz/ 60 shall I? (= offer) /'sel ai, səl 'ai/ 66 shall we? (= suggestion) /'sæl wi:, səl 'wi:/ 65 shame /jeim/ 55 shampoo /fæm'pu:/ 40 share  $/(e_2(r)/14$ sharpener as in pencil sharpener /'sa:pnə(r)/ 5 shave /ferv/ 4() sheep /fi:p/ 24 sheet /fi:t/ 4() shelf /felf/ 39



# Sara.English.School | www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

ala:	compething //a.mon/ 22
shirt /\frac{13:t}{18}	something /'sʌm0ɪŋ/ 23
shoe /ʃuː/ 18	sometimes /'samtaimz/ 17
shooting /ˈʃuːtɪŋ/ 50	son /sʌn/ 1()
shop /sop/ 37	song /spij/ 5()
shop assistant /'sop əsistənt/ 19, 44	soon /su:n/ 60, 75
shopping as in do the shopping	sore /so:(r)/ 22
/'∫opiŋ/ 17. 37. 39	sorry /'spri/ 63, 64, 67
shopping centre /'spin senta(r)/ 37	sounds /saondz/ 64
short /[o:t/ 13, 19	soup /su:p/ 28
shorts /ʃɔːts/ 57	south /sao0/ 34, 35
should /fod/ 22, 58	South Korea /saoθ kəˈriːə/ 4
shoulder /ˈʃəʊldə(r)/ 12	south-east /sauθ 'i:st/ 35
shower <i>n</i> (in the bathroom) /' $\int av_{\theta}(r)/17.40$ , 55	south-west /saoθ 'west/ 35
shower $n = rain$ / $aoo(r)$ / 21	soy sauce /sai 'sais/ 28
shut /sht/ 11, 62	Spain /spein/ 4
shy /ʃat/ 14	Spanish /'spænis/ 4
sick /sik/ 22	sparkling /'spa:kliŋ/ 28
sightseeing /ˈsaɪtsiːɪŋ/ 58	speak /spi:k/ 69
sign v /sam/ 59	speaker /'spi:kə(r)/ 46
sign as in road sign /sam/ 32	speaking /'spi:kin/ 69
signature /'sɪgnətʃə(r)/ 9	speed camera /'spi:d kæm(ə)rə/ 32
since /sms/ 75	speed limit /'spi:d limut/ 32
sing /siij/ 50	spell /spel/ 7
singer $\frac{\sin \sigma(r)}{50.51}$	spend (money) /spend ('mʌni)/ 20
single $n = \text{song} / \frac{\text{singl}}{51}$	spend (time) /spend ('taun)/ 10, 45, 50
single $n = \text{ticket}$ /'singl/ 30	split up /split 'Ap/ 15
single $adj$ (= for one) /'singl/ 40, 55	spoon /spu:n/ 28
single adj (= not married) /'suggl/ 8	sporty /'spo:ti/ 14
singles chart /'snjglz tʃa:t/ 51	spring /spriij/ 3
singular noun /sɪŋgjələ ˈnaon/ 6	square /skweə(r)/ 35
sink /siŋk/ 39	squid /skwid/ 24
sister /'sistə(r)/ 10	staff /sta:f/ 55
sister-in-law /'sistər in lo:/ 10	stairs /steaz/ 38
sit down /sit 'daon/ 11,73	stalls /sto:lz/ 37
size /saiz/ 19, 35	stamp /stæmp/ 59
skiing /ˈskiːŋ/ 50	stand up /stænd 'Ap/ 11.73
skirt /sk3:t/ 18	star /sta:(r)/ 52
sky /skai/ 36	start /sta:t/ 42
sleep /sli:p/ 17.61	starter /'sta:tə(r)/ 28
slim /slim/ 13	state school /'steit sku:l/ 42
slow /slao/ 30, 47	station as in petrol station /'steifn/ 32
small /smɔ:l/ 19	station as in railway station /'stersn/ 31
smart /smo:t/ 19	statue /'stætsu:/ 35
smoking as in no smoking /'sməʊkuɪ/ 33	status as in marital status /'steitos/ 9
snow n, v /snao/ 21	status as $m$ mar tal status $7$ sterios $7$ star (= live for a short period) $v$ , $n$ /ster/ 55
so /səu/ 77	stay at school /ster at 'sku:1/ 42
so as in an hour or so /səu/ 57	stay in bed /ster in 'bed/ 22
soap /səop/ 4()	steak /steik/ 28
	steps /steps/ 38
soap (= soap opera) /səop/ 53 sociable /'səoʃəbl/ 14	stick /stik/ 49
sock /spk/ 18	stick as in memory stick /stik/ 46
sofa /'səufə/ 41	still adj /stil/ 28
software engineer /'softwear endʒɪnɪə(r)/ 43	still adv /stil/ 71
soldier /'səoldʒə(r)/ 44	stomach //stʌmək/ 12
some /sam, sam/ 53	stomach-ache /'stamək eik/ 22
some more /səm 'mɔ:(r)/ 28	stop as in bus stop, last stop /stop/ 29



### www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

store as in department store /sto:(r)/ 37 storm /sto:m/ 21 story as in love story /'sto:ri/ 52 straight adj /streit/ 13 straight as in straight on /streit/ 31 strange /streind3/ 70 strawberry /'stra:b(a)ri/ 25 strong /strony/ 70 study /'stʌdi/ 38 studies as in business studies /'stadiz/ 43 stupid /'stju:pid/ 14 subject /'snbd3ikt/ 42 sugar /'foqə(r)/ 26 suggestion /sə'dʒestſn/ 65 suit /su:t/ 18 suitcase /'su:(t)kers/ 54, 56 summer /'samə(r)/ 3 sun /snn/ 21 sunbathe /'sʌnbeið/ 57 sunglasses /'sangla:siz/ 18 sunny /'sʌni/ 21 sunshine /'sʌnʃaɪn/ 21 supermarket /'su:pəma:kit/ 37 sure *adj*  $/\int o_2(r)/7$ , 65, 68 sure adv /[və(r)/ 28, 63 surname /'sa:neim/ 9 surprised /sə'praizd/ 16 sweater /'swetə(r)/ 18 sweet /swi:t/ 25 swim n /swim  $\sqrt{79}$ Swiss /swis/ 4 Switzerland /'switsələnd/ 4

TV /ti: 'vi:/ 41,53 table (= furniture) /'teibl/ 5 table (= list of facts/words) /'teibl/ Starter, 49 table tennis /'teibl tenis/ 50 tablet /'tæblət/ 23 take (=buy) /teik/ 19 take (= carry) /teik/ 63 take (= have a certain size) /teik/ 19 take (= use a form of transport) /teik/ 30, 32, 57 take (a tablet/medicine) /teik/ 23 take an exam /telk ən ıg'zæm/ 42 take away /teik ə'wei/ 27 take off (= leave the ground) /teik 'of, 'teik of / 56, 73 take off (= remove) /teik 'pf/ 40, 73 take out, take something out /terk 'aut, terk samθin 'aut/ 39 take photos /teik 'fautauz/ 58 take the first turning /teik ða fa:st 'ta:nin/ 31 tall /to:1/ 13 tap /taep/ 39 tart /ta:t/ 28

taxi driver /'tæksi draivə(r)/ 44 tea /ti:/ 27 teacher /'ti:t/o(r)/ 44 team /ti:m/ 49 technology as in design and technology /tek'noladzi/ 42 technology as in IT, ICT /tek 'nolodzi/ 42 teenager /'ti:neid35(r)/ 13 teens /ti:nz/ 13 teeth /ti:θ/ 17.40 television /'telivi3n, teli'vi3n / 41 temperature /'tempratsa(r)/ 22 temple /'templ/ 35 tennis /'tenis/ 17,49 tennis as in table tennis /'tens/ 50 term /ta:m/ 43 terminal /'ta:nunl/ 56 terrible /'terabl/ 36, 42, 79 text v. n /tekst/ 69 Thai /tai/ 4 Thailand /'tailænd/ 4 thank you /'θægk ju:/ 66 thanks /0ænks/ 26, 31, 60, 61, 66 that's all /oets 'o:1/ 26 the news /ðə 'nju:z/ 53 the same to you /ðə seim tə 'ju:/ 61 then /ðen/ 78 then as in See you then /ðen/ 60 thin  $\theta_{\rm in}/13$ think  $\theta_{in}k/48,68$ third  $\theta$ 3:d/ 3 thirsty /'03:sti/ 16 this evening, this weekend, etc. /ðis 'i:vnin, ðis wi:k'end/ 75 this is (used when introducing someone) /'ðis iz/ 60 this is (used on the phone) /'ðis iz/ 69 thousand /'θaυzənd/ 1 thriller  $\frac{1}{\theta}$  thriller  $\frac{1}{\theta}$  thriller  $\frac{1}{\theta}$  thriller  $\frac{1}{\theta}$ throat /0raut/ 22 through /0ru:/ 76 thumb /0Am/ 12 thunder /'0\ndo(r)/ 21 tick /tik/ Starter, 9 ticket /'tikit/ 30, 56 ticket office /'tikit ofis/ 30 tidy /'taɪdi/ 14 tie /tai/ 18 tight /tait/ 19 tights /tarts/ 18 time /taim/ 2.61 time as in half-time /tann/ 49 time as in have a nice time /taim/ 79 time as in in (ten days') time /tamy 75 timetable /'taımteıbl/ 29, 30 tin /tin/ 25, 26



taste /teist/ 25

www.SaraEnglishSchool.com

tired /'taiəd/ 16 tissue /'tɪ[u:/ 23, 40) toasted sandwich /təustid 'sænwit], 'sænwid3/ 27 toe /tau/ 12 together /tə'qeðə(r)/ 10, 15 toilet /'toilet/ 33, 40 tomato /tə'ma:təu/ 25 tomorrow /tə'morəu/ 75 tongue as in mother tongue /tʌn/ 9 too (= also) /tu:/ 61,77 too (= more than is good) /tu:/ 19 tooth /tu:0/ 12 toothache /'tu:θeik/ 22 toothbrush /'tu:θbrns/ 40 toothpaste /'tu:0peist/ 40 top (= clothes) /top/ 18 top (= highest part) /top/ 38, 49 touch /tnts/ 11 tour /toə(r)/ 58 tourist /'toarist/ 55 towel /'taval/ 40 town /taon/ 35 town centre /taon 'sentə(r)/ 38 traffic /'træfik/ 32 traflic jam /'træfik dæm/ 32 traffic light /'træfik lait/ 32 train /trem/ 30 train driver /'trein draivə(r)/ 44 trainers /'treinəz/ 18 transport as in public transport /'transport/ 36 travelinsurance /'trævl insoprens/ 54 traveller's cheque /trævələz 'tʃek/ 59 travelling /'trævəlm/ 50 tree /tri:/ 36 tree as in family tree /tri:/ 10 trolley /'troli/ 37, 56 trousers /'traozəz/ 18 true /tru:/ Starter try /trai/ 23 try on /'trai on/ 19,73 T-shirt /'ti: [3:t/ 18 tuna /'t ju:nə/ 24 Turkey /'ta:ki/ 4 Turkish /'ta:k1 [/ 4 turn something off /ta:n samθin 'of/ 39 turn something on /ta:n samθin 'pn/ 11, 39, 73 turning /'ta:min/ 31 twice /twais/ 17 twin room /'twin ru:m/ 55 type /tarp/ 45 typical /'tipikl/ 58

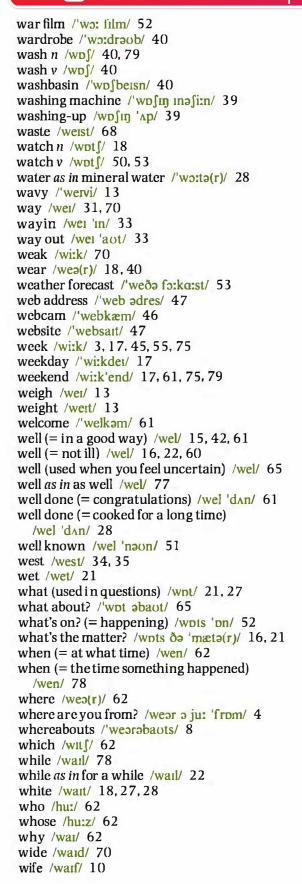
UK (United Kingdom) /ju: 'kei/ 4 USA (United States of America) /ju: es 'ei/ 4 ugly /'Aqli/ 13 umbrella /m'brelə/ 18 unable /\n'eibl/ 51 uncle /'Ankl/ 10 uncomfortable /An'kAmf(ə)təbl/ 19 under (= less than)  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{1}{2}$  (r)/ 26. 35 under (= position)  $/ \ln d_{\theta}(r) / 76$ undergraduate /\ndə'qræd\undergrad1 43 underline /Andə'lam/ Starter unemployed /Aniin'ploid/ 44 unfortunately /n/fort[enetli/ 43 unfriendly /nn'frendli/ 14 unhappy /nh'hæpi/ 16 uniform / ju:mfo:m/ 42 United Kingdom (UK) /junaited 'kindəm/ 4 United States of America (USA) /junartid steits a v a'merika/ 4 university /ju:ni'v3:səti/ 42 unnecessary /n'nesəsəri/ 70 untidy /n'taidi/ 14 until /nn'til/ 42, 75 unusual /\n'ju:\u00e3u\u00e4l/ 70 up /Ap/ 76 upset / Ap'set/ 16 upstairs / \( \text{\lambda} \) 'steəz/ 38 use /ju:z/ 40, 47 useful /'ju:sfl/ 70 useless /'ju:sləs/ 70 usually /'ju:zuəli/ 17 utility room /ju:'tıləti ru:m/ 38

vacancies as in no vacancies /'verkənstz/ 33 valley /'væli/ 36 various /'veəriəs/ 50 verb /vɜ:b/ 6 very /'veri/ 19, 48, 60, 66 vet /vet/ 44 views /vju:z/ 38 village /'vɪlɪdʒ/ 35 vinegar /'vɪnɪgə(r)/ 28 violent /'vaɪələnt/ 52 violin /vaɪələnt/ 51 violinist /vaɪə'lmɪst/ 51 visa /'vi:zə/ 54 visit /'vɪzɪt/ 47, 58 volleyball /'volibɔ:l/ 49

wages /'weidʒiz/ 45 waist /weist/ 12 wait /weit/ 30 wake up /weik 'np/ 73 Wales /weilz/ 4 walk n /wo:k/ 17,57,79 walk v /wo:k/ 6,11 wall /wo:l/ 41 want /wont/ 64,66 war /wo:(r)/ 53



www.SaraEnglishSchool.com



win (= be best or first) /win/ 49 win (money) /win/ 20 wind /wind/ 21 window /'windou/ 41 window seat /'window sixt/ 56 windy /'windi/ 21 wine /wain/ 28 winter /'winta(r)/ 3 wonderful /'wandafl/ 36, 48 wood /wod/ 36 wool as in cotton wool /wol/ 23 word /wa:d/ 6 work n / wa:k / 17work v /w3:k/ 42, 45 worried /'warid/ 16 worry as in don't worry /wa i/ 66 worst /wasst/ 42 worth /w3:θ/ 62 wrist /rist/ 12 write /rait/ 43, 59 wrong (= causing problems) /rpn/ 62 wrong (= not right) /ron/ Starter, 7, 19 wrong number /ron 'namba(r)/ 69

year /jiə(r)/ 3,45 yellow /'jeləu/ 18 yes, please /'jes pli:z, jes 'pli:z/ 27,66 yesterday /'jestədei/ 75 you too /ju: 'tu:/ 61 young /jʌŋ/ 13

zero /'ziarau/ 69

# Oxford Word Skills

### Learn and practise English vocabulary

Basic: for elementary and pre-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams



Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.



It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

